

# FORD **C-MAX** Owner's Manual





The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2013

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3567en 09/2013 20130909090846



# Table of Contents

---

## Introduction

About This Manual.....	7
Symbols Glossary.....	7
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	8

## At a Glance

At a Glance.....	9
------------------	---

## Child Safety

Child Seats.....	18
Booster Seats.....	19
Child Seat Positioning.....	20
ISOFIX Anchor Points.....	23
Child Safety Locks.....	24

## Occupant protection

Principle of Operation.....	26
Fastening the safety belts.....	28
Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....	32
Belt Minder.....	32
Using safety belts during pregnancy.....	33
Disabling the passenger airbag.....	33

## Locks

Locking and Unlocking.....	35
Keyless Entry.....	39
Global Opening and Closing.....	41

## Engine immobilizer

Principle of Operation.....	43
Coded keys.....	43
Arming the engine immobilizer.....	43
Disarming the engine immobilizer.....	43

## Alarm

Principle of Operation.....	44
Arming the alarm.....	45
Disarming the alarm.....	45

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	46
Audio Control.....	46
Voice Control.....	47

## Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers.....	48
Autowipers.....	48
Windshield Washers.....	49
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	49
Headlamp Washers.....	50
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	50
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	50
Technical Specifications.....	52

## Lighting

Lighting Control.....	53
Autolamps.....	54
Automatic High Beam Control.....	54
Front Fog Lamps.....	56
Rear Fog Lamps.....	56
Adjusting the Headlamps - Vehicles With: Adaptive Front Lighting/High Intensity Discharge Headlamps.....	56
Headlamp Leveling.....	56
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	57
Direction Indicators.....	58
Cornering Lamps.....	58
Interior Lamps.....	59
Removing a Headlamp.....	60
Changing a Bulb.....	60
Bulb Specification Chart.....	67

## Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows.....	69
Exterior Mirrors.....	70
Power exterior mirrors.....	70
Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	71
Blind Spot Monitor.....	72



# Table of Contents

---

## Instrument Cluster

Gauges.....	75
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	77
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	79

## Information Displays

General Information.....	81
Trip Computer.....	86
Personalized Settings.....	87
Information Messages.....	87

## Climate Control

Principle of Operation.....	97
Air Vents.....	97
Manual Climate Control.....	98
Automatic Climate Control.....	100
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	102
Auxiliary Heater.....	102

## Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position.....	105
Manual Seats.....	105
Head Restraints.....	106
Power Seats.....	107
Rear Seats.....	108
Heated Seats.....	116

## Convenience features

Sun Shades.....	117
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	118
Clock.....	118
Cigar Lighter.....	118
Auxiliary Power Points.....	119
Cup Holders.....	119
Storage compartments.....	120
Glasses Holder.....	120
Auxiliary Input Jack.....	121
USB Port.....	121
Satellite Navigation Unit Holder.....	122

Floor Mats.....	122
-----------------	-----

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information.....	123
Ignition Switch.....	123
Steering Wheel Lock.....	123
Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	123
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	124
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	125
Keyless Starting.....	125
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	127
Switching Off the Engine.....	127
Engine Block Heater.....	128

## Auto-Start-Stop

Principle of Operation.....	129
Using start-stop.....	129

## Eco Mode

Principle of Operation.....	131
Using Eco mode.....	131

## Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions.....	132
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	132
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	132
Catalytic Converter.....	132
Fuel filler door.....	133
Refueling.....	134
Fuel Consumption.....	134
Technical Specifications.....	135

## Transmission

Manual Transmission.....	137
Automatic Transmission.....	137

## Brakes

Principle of Operation.....	140
-----------------------------	-----



# Table of Contents

---

Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	140
Parking Brake.....	140

## Stability Control

Principle of Operation.....	141
Using Stability Control.....	141

## Hill Start Assist

Principle of Operation.....	142
Using hill start assist.....	142

## Parking Aids

Principle of Operation.....	144
Parking Aid - Vehicles With: Rear Parking Aid.....	144
Parking Aid - Vehicles With: Front and Rear Parking Aid.....	145

## Active Park Assist

Principle of Operation.....	148
Using active park assist.....	148

## Rear view camera

Principle of Operation.....	151
Rear View Camera.....	151

## Cruise Control

Principle of Operation.....	154
Using Cruise Control.....	154

## Speed Limiter

Principle of Operation.....	156
Using the speed limiter.....	156

## Driver Alert

Principle of Operation.....	157
Using driver alert.....	157

## Active City Stop

Principle of Operation.....	159
Using Active City Stop.....	159

## Driving Aids

Lane Keeping System.....	161
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	163

## Load Carrying

General Information.....	165
Luggage Anchor Points.....	165
Luggage Covers.....	167
Cargo Nets.....	167
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	168

## Towing

Towing a Trailer.....	171
Retractable tow ball.....	172

## Driving Hints

Breaking-In.....	175
Cold Weather Precautions.....	175
Driving Through Water.....	175

## Roadside Emergencies

First Aid Kit.....	176
Warning Triangle.....	176
Emergency Exit.....	176

## Fuses

Fuse Box Locations.....	177
Changing a Fuse.....	177
Fuse Specification Chart.....	178

## Vehicle recovery

Towing Points.....	186
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....	186



# Table of Contents

---

## Maintenance

General Information.....	188
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	188
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	190
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma).....	191
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel.....	192
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	193
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™ .....	194
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma).....	194
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel/2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	195
Engine Oil Check.....	195
Engine Coolant Check.....	195
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check.....	196
Washer Fluid Check.....	196
Technical Specifications.....	197

## Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior.....	200
Cleaning the Interior.....	201
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	201

## Vehicle battery

Jump-Starting the Vehicle.....	202
Changing the 12V Battery.....	203
Battery connection points.....	203

## Wheels and Tires

General Information.....	204
Changing a Road Wheel.....	204
Temporary Mobility Kit.....	209
Tire Care.....	212
Using Winter Tires.....	213
Using Snow Chains.....	213

Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	213
Technical Specifications.....	216

## Vehicle identification

Vehicle Identification Plate.....	221
Vehicle Identification Number.....	222

## Capacities and Specifications

Technical Specifications.....	223
-------------------------------	-----

## Audio introduction

Important audio information.....	226
----------------------------------	-----

## Audio unit overview

Audio unit overview .....	227
---------------------------	-----

## Audio System Security

Security code.....	235
--------------------	-----

## Audio unit operation

On/off control.....	236
Sound button.....	236
Waveband button.....	236
Station tuning control.....	236
Station preset buttons.....	237
Autostore control.....	237
Traffic information control.....	237

## Audio unit menus

Automatic volume control.....	239
Digital signal processing (DSP).....	239
News broadcasts.....	239
Alternative frequencies.....	239
Regional mode (REG).....	240

## Compact Disc Player

Compact disc playback.....	241
Track selection.....	241



# Table of Contents

---

Fast forward/reverse.....	241
Shuffle/random.....	241
Repeat compact disc tracks.....	241
Compact disc track scanning.....	242
MP3 file playback.....	242
MP3 display options.....	242
Ending compact disc playback.....	243

## **Auxiliary input jack**

Auxiliary input jack.....	244
---------------------------	-----

## **Audio Troubleshooting**

Audio troubleshooting.....	245
----------------------------	-----

## **Navigation**

Navigation.....	246
-----------------	-----

## **SYNC™**

General Information.....	255
Using Voice Recognition.....	256
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....	259
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....	269
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....	272
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....	276

## **Appendices**

Type approvals.....	284
Type approvals.....	284
Type approvals.....	284
Type approvals.....	285
Type approvals.....	285
Type approvals.....	286
Type approvals.....	286
Electromagnetic compatibility.....	286
End User License Agreement.....	288







# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

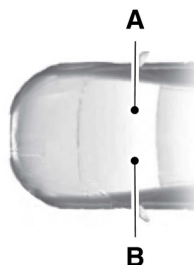
**Note:** This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to your vehicle.

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this manual may be used for different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle. However, the essential information in the illustrations is always correct.

**Note:** Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

- A Right-hand side
- B Left-hand side

## Protecting the Environment

You must play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

## SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

### Symbols in this handbook

#### WARNING



You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.

#### CAUTION



You risk damaging your vehicle if you do not follow the instructions highlighted by the caution symbol.

### Symbols on your vehicle





# Introduction

---



When you see these symbols, read and follow the relevant instructions in this handbook before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

## Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

## Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle

development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

## Warranty on Replacement Parts

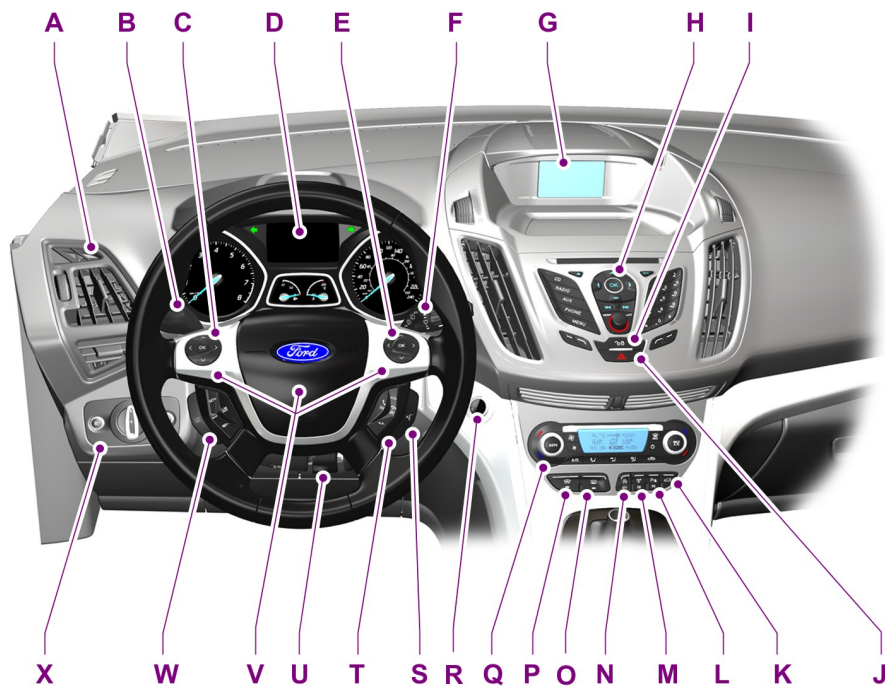
Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.



# At a Glance

## Instrument panel overview

### Left-hand drive

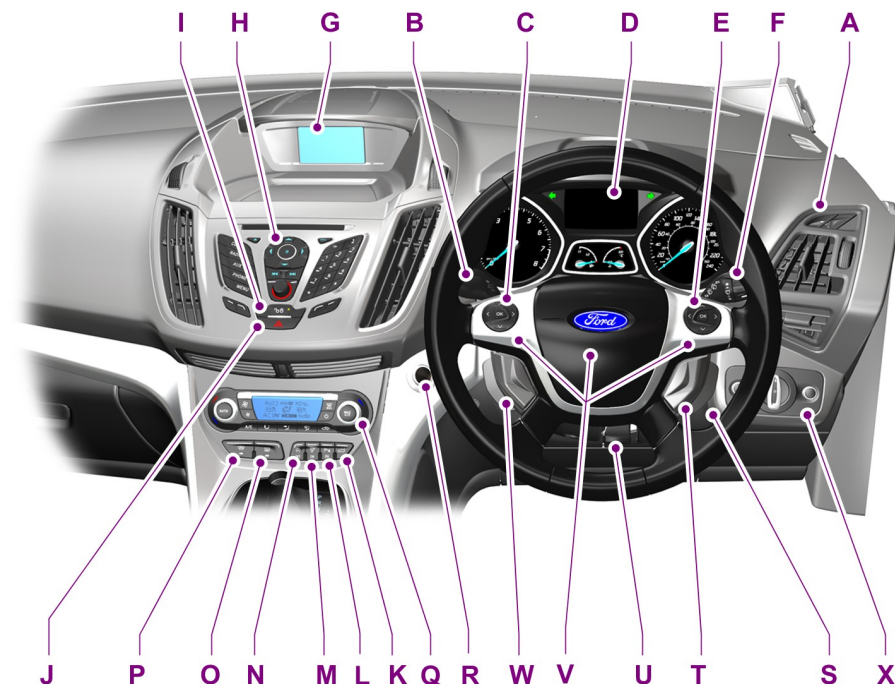


E130098



# At a Glance

## Right-hand drive



E130099

- A Air vents. See **Air Vents** (page 97).
- B Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 58). High beam. See **Lighting Control** (page 53).
- C Left-hand drive vehicles with voice control - Information display control. See **Information Displays** (page 81).
- C Left-hand drive vehicles without voice control - Information display control. See **Information Displays** (page 81).
- C Right-hand drive vehicles with voice control - Information and entertainment display control.
- C Right-hand drive vehicles without voice control - Information display control. See **Information Displays** (page 81).



## At a Glance


- D Instrument cluster. See **Gauges** (page 75). See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 77).
- E Left-hand drive vehicles with voice control - Information and entertainment display control.
- E Left-hand drive vehicles without voice control - Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 46).
- E Right-hand drive vehicles with voice control - Information display control. See **Information Displays** (page 81).
- E Right-hand drive vehicles without voice control - Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 46).
- F Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 48).
- G Information and entertainment display.
- H Audio unit. See **Audio unit overview** (page 227).
- I Door lock button. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 35).
- J Hazard warning flasher switch. See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 57).
- K Power liftgate switch. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 35).
- L Parking aid switch. See **Parking Aids** (page 144).
- M Active park assist switch. See **Active Park Assist** (page 148).
- N Start-stop switch. See **Using start-stop** (page 129).
- O Heated rear window switch. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 102).
- P Heated windshield switch. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 102).
- Q Climate controls. See **Climate Control** (page 97).
- R Start button. See **Keyless Starting** (page 125).
- S Ignition switch. See **Ignition Switch** (page 123).
- T Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 46). Voice control. See **Voice Control** (page 47). Telephone control.
- U Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 46).
- V Horn.
- W Cruise control switches. See **Cruise Control** (page 154). Speed limiter switches. See **Speed Limiter** (page 156).
- X Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 53). Front fog lamps. See **Front Fog Lamps** (page 56). Rear fog lamp. See **Rear Fog Lamps** (page 56). Headlamp leveling control. See **Headlamp Leveling** (page 56). Instrument lighting dimmer. See **Instrument Lighting Dimmer** (page 118).




# At a Glance

## Power liftgate

### WARNINGS

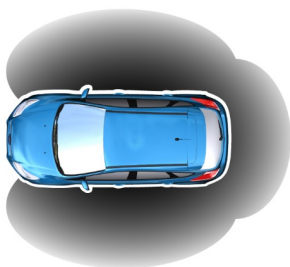
 Do not operate the luggage compartment lid unless it is free from obstruction.

 Careless opening and closing of the luggage compartment lid can override the protection function and cause injuries.

The luggage compartment lid can be operated using the remote control, the center console switch, the luggage compartment lid switch or the luggage compartment lid release handle.

See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 35).

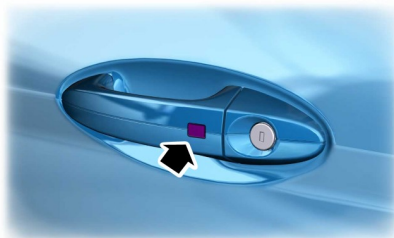
## Keyless entry



E78276

Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges.

## Unlocking the vehicle



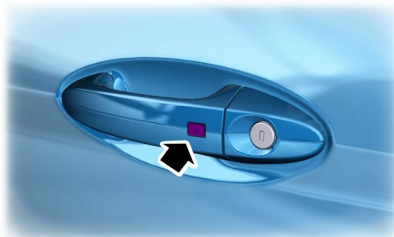
E87384

Open any door.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door.

One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the luggage compartment lid have been unlocked and that the alarm has been disarmed.

## Locking the vehicle



E87384

Touch a front door handle lock sensor to lock the vehicle.

See **Keyless Entry** (page 39).

## Adjusting the steering wheel

### WARNING



Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.



## At a Glance



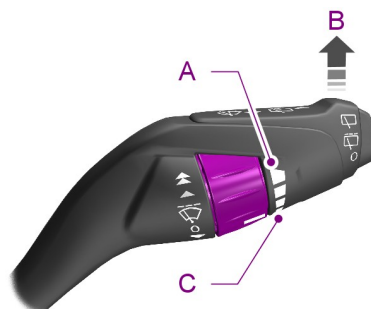
E95178



E95179

See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 46).

## Autowipers



E128445

- A High sensitivity
- B On
- C Low sensitivity

## Autolamps



E70719

The headlamps will come on and go off automatically depending on the ambient light.

See **Autolamps** (page 54).

## Power windows

**Note:** To reduce wind noise or buffeting when just one window is open, open the opposite window slightly.

See **Power Windows** (page 69).



# At a Glance

## Power folding mirrors



E72623

See **Power exterior mirrors** (page 70).

## Information displays



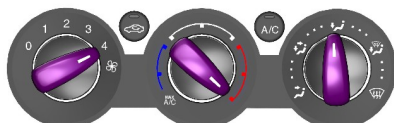
E130248

Use the arrow buttons to navigate through the menus and press **OK** to make a selection.

See **General Information** (page 81).

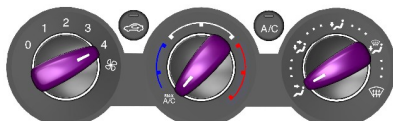
## Manual climate control

### Heating the interior quickly



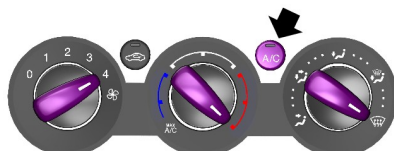
E129884

### Cooling the interior quickly



E129887

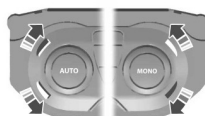
### Defrosting and demisting the windshield



E129888

See **Manual Climate Control** (page 98).

## Automatic climate control



E91391



# At a Glance

See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 100).

## Keyless starting



E85766

Press the start button.

## Stopping the engine when the vehicle is moving

### WARNING



Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not be locked, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off some electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators may also be OFF.

Press and hold the start button for two seconds, or press three times within three seconds.

Press the start button.

See **Keyless Starting** (page 125).

## Diesel particulate filter (DPF)

### WARNING



Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The DPF regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after DPF regeneration, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

See **Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 127).

## Fuel filler door

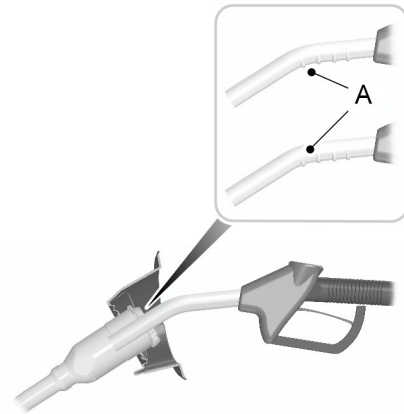


E86613

Press the door to open it. Open the door fully until it engages.



## At a Glance



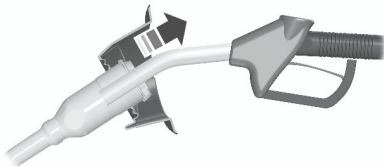
E139202

Insert the fuel nozzle up to and including the first notch on the nozzle **A**. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel pipe opening.

### WARNING



We recommend that you remove the fuel nozzle slowly to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank. Alternatively you can wait 10 seconds before removing the fuel nozzle.



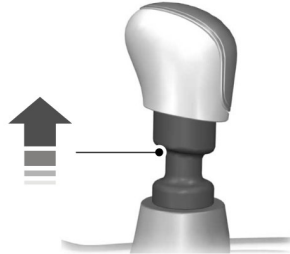
E119081

Slightly raise the fuel nozzle to remove it.

See **Fuel filler door** (page 133).

## Manual transmission

### Selecting reverse gear



E99067

On some vehicles it is necessary to raise the collar whilst selecting reverse gear.

See **Manual Transmission** (page 137).

## Automatic transmission

### WARNING



Apply the brakes before moving the selector lever and keep them applied until you are ready to move off.



E80836

P Park  
R Reverse



## At a Glance

- N Neutral
- D Drive
- S Sport mode and manual shifting

See **Automatic Transmission** (page 137).

### Speed limiter

The system allows you to set a speed, to which the vehicle then becomes limited.

See **Speed Limiter** (page 156).

### Towing the vehicle on four wheels

#### CAUTION



For certain engine and transmission combinations, it is recommended not to tow the vehicle with the drive wheels on the ground.

See **Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels** (page 186).



# Child Safety

## CHILD SEATS








E133140





E68916

### WARNINGS

-  Secure children that are less than 150 centimeters (59 inches) tall in a suitable, approved child restraint, in the rear seat.
-  Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!
-  Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a child restraint.
-  Do not modify child restraints in any way.
-  Do not hold a child on your lap when the vehicle is moving.

### WARNINGS

-  Do not leave unattended children in your vehicle.
-  If your vehicle has been involved in an accident, have the child restraints checked by properly trained technicians.

**Note:** *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

Only child restraints certified to ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of these are available from your Dealer.

### Child restraints for different mass groups

Use the correct child restraint as follows:

#### Baby safety seat



E68918

Secure children that weigh less than 13 kilograms (29 pounds) in a rearward facing baby safety seat (Group 0+) in the rear seat.



# Child Safety

## Child safety seat



E68920


Secure children that weigh between 13 and 18 kilograms (29 and 40 pounds) in a child safety seat (Group 1) in the rear seat.

## BOOSTER SEATS

### WARNINGS

-  Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the safety belt.
-  Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a safety belt that is slack or twisted.
-  Do not put the safety belt under your child's arm or behind its back.
-  Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.
-  Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.
-  Secure children that weigh more than 15 kilograms (33 pounds) but are less than 150 centimeters (59 inches) tall in a booster seat or a booster cushion.

### CAUTION

 When using a child seat on a rear seat, make sure that the child seat rests tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 106).

## Booster seat (Group 2)



E70710

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult safety belt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips.



# Child Safety


## Booster cushion (Group 3)




E68924


## CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

### WARNINGS

 Please consult your Dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.

### WARNINGS

 Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

 When using a child seat with a safety belt, make sure that the safety belt is not slack or twisted.

### CAUTION

 The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 106).

**Note:** When using a child seat on a front seat, always adjust the front passenger seat to its fully rearwards position. If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the safety belt without slack remaining, adjust the seatback to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat. See **Seats** (page 105).

## Child seat positions

Seating positions	Mass group categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	Up to 10 kg (22 lbs)	Up to 13 kg (29 lbs)	9 - 18 kg (20 - 40 lbs)	15 - 25 kg (33 - 55 lbs)	22 - 36 kg (49 - 79 lbs)
	Baby safety seat		Child safety seat	Booster seat or cushion	
Front passenger seat with airbag <b>ON</b>	X	X	UF <sup>1</sup>	UF <sup>1</sup>	UF <sup>1</sup>
Front passenger seat with airbag <b>OFF</b>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>
Second row seats - Grand C-MAX	U	U	U	U	U



# Child Safety

Seating positions	Mass group categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	Up to 10 kg (22 lbs)	Up to 13 kg (29 lbs)	9 - 18 kg (20 - 40 lbs)	15 - 25 kg (33 - 55 lbs)	22 - 36 kg (49 - 79 lbs)
	Baby safety seat		Child safety seat	Booster seat or cushion	
Second row seats - C-MAX	U	U	U	U	U
Third row seats - Grand C-MAX	U	U	U	U	U

**X** Not suitable for children in this mass group.

**U** Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group.

**U<sup>1</sup>** Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, in the rear seat.

**U<sup>1</sup>** Suitable for universal category forward facing child seats approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, in the rear seat.

## ISOFIX child seats

Seating positions		Mass group categories	
		0+	1
		Rear facing	Forward facing
		Up to 13 kg (29 lbs)	9 - 18 kg (20 - 40 lbs)
Front seat	Size class	Vehicle seating position not ISOFIX equipped	
	Seat type		
Second row outboard seat ISOFIX - Grand C-MAX	Size class	C, D, E <sup>1</sup>	A, B, B1, C, D <sup>1</sup>
	Seat type	IL <sup>2</sup>	IL <sup>2</sup> , IUF <sup>3</sup>
Second row outboard seat ISOFIX - C-MAX	Size class	D, E <sup>1</sup>	A, B, B1, D <sup>1</sup>
	Seat type	IL <sup>2</sup>	IL <sup>2</sup> , IUF <sup>3</sup>



# Child Safety

Seating positions		Mass group categories	
		O+	1
		Rear facing	Forward facing
		Up to 13 kg (29 lbs)	9 - 18 kg (20 - 40 lbs)
Second row center seat	Size class	Vehicle seating position not ISOFIX equipped	
	Seat type		
Third row seat ISOFIX - Grand C-MAX	Size class	Vehicle seating position not ISOFIX equipped	
	Seat type		

**IL** Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems of the **semi-universal** category. Please consult child restraints systems suppliers' vehicle recommendation lists.

**IUF** Suitable for ISOFIX forward facing child restraints systems of **universal** category approved for use in this mass group and ISOFIX size class.

<sup>1</sup>The ISOFIX size class for both **universal** and **semi-universal** child restraints systems is defined by the capital letters **A** to **G**. These identification letters are displayed on ISOFIX child restraints.

<sup>2</sup>At time of publishing the recommended Group O+ ISOFIX baby safety seat is the Britax Romer Baby Safe. Please consult your Dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.


<sup>3</sup>At time of publishing the recommended Group 1 ISOFIX child seat is the Britax Romer Duo. Please consult your Dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.



# Child Safety

## ISOFIX ANCHOR POINTS

### WARNING

 Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend the use of a top tether or support leg.

**Note:** When you are purchasing an ISOFIX restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See **Child Seat Positioning** (page 20).

Your vehicle is fitted with ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints.

The ISOFIX system comprises two rigid attachment arms on the child restraint that attach to anchor points on the outboard rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet. Tether anchor points are fitted behind the outboard rear seats for child restraints with a top tether.


## Top tether anchor points - All vehicles



E133892

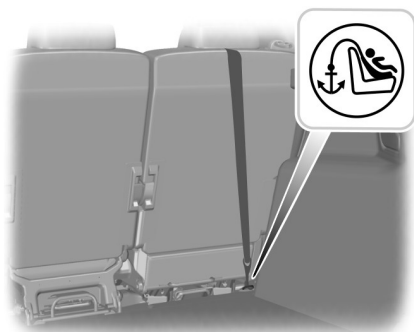
## Top tether anchor points - C-MAX

### WARNING

 If your vehicle is equipped with the comfort seat system, slide the second row seat forwards to gain access to the anchor points. After installing the ISOFIX seat, do not move the seat to the comfort position as it could interfere with the tether strap routing.



# Child Safety



E132100

## Top tether anchor points - Grand C-MAX



E130125

## Attaching a child seat with top tethers

### WARNINGS



Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.

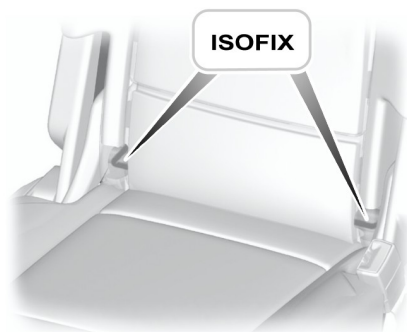
### WARNINGS



Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

**Note:** Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation. See **Luggage Covers** (page 167).

1. Route the tether strap to the anchor point.



E75531

2. Push the child seat back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.
3. Tighten the tether strap in line with the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

### WARNING



You cannot open the doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

**Note:** Pressing the switch will also disable the rear electric window switches.



## Child Safety

---



E124779



# Occupant protection

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Airbags

#### WARNINGS



Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags.



Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!



Wear a safety belt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the safety belt properly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 105).



Have repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and safety belts carried out by a properly trained technician.



Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers.



Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags.

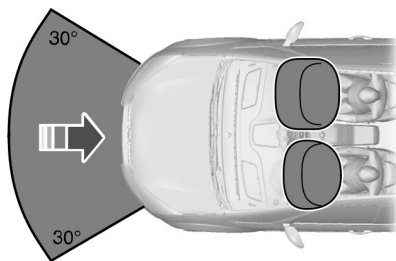


Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by a properly trained technician.

**Note:** You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

**Note:** Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.

### Front airbags



E74302

The driver airbag, front passenger airbag and the safety belt pretensioners will deploy during significant frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbags will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the driver and front passenger airbags will not deploy.

### Side and curtain airbags

During significant lateral collisions, only the airbags on the side affected by the collision and the safety belt pretensioners will deploy. The airbags will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing protection for the body. The side and curtain airbags will not deploy during minor lateral collisions, front collisions, rear collisions or overturns.



# Occupant protection

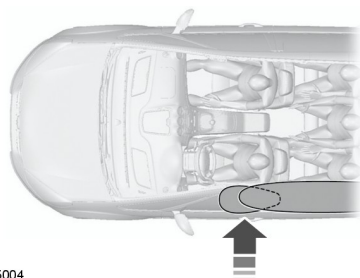
## Side airbags



E72658

Side airbags are fitted inside the seatback of the front seats. A label indicates that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.

## Curtain airbags



E75004

Curtain airbags are fitted inside the trim panels over the front and rear side windows. Moulded badges in the B-pillar trim panels indicate that curtain airbags are fitted to your vehicle.

## Safety belts

### WARNINGS

! Wear a safety belt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the safety belt properly, can it hold you in a position to achieve its optimum effect. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 105).

### WARNINGS

- ! Never use a safety belt for more than one person.
- ! Use the correct buckle for each safety belt.
- ! Do not use a safety belt that is slack or twisted.
- ! Do not wear thick clothing. The safety belt must fit tightly around your body to achieve its optimum effect.
- ! Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Safety belt pretensioners have a lower deployment threshold than the airbags. During minor collisions, it is possible that only the safety belt pretensioners will deploy.

### All vehicles

The driver and front passenger safety belt systems are fitted with a safety belt pretensioner.

### Grand C-MAX

The second row center safety belt system is also fitted with a safety belt pretensioner.

### Status after a collision

### WARNINGS

- ! Safety belts subjected to strain, as a result of an accident, should be renewed and the anchorages checked by a properly trained technician.
- ! If a safety belt pretensioner has been deployed the safety belt must be renewed.



# Occupant protection

## FASTENING THE SAFETY BELTS

### WARNINGS



Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the safety belt properly if you do not hear a click.



In order to ensure that the center belt works properly, the rear seatback must be correctly engaged.

**Note:** *The safety belt tongues are designed so that you can only insert them into the correct buckle.*



E74124



E129521

Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

Press the red button on the buckle to release the belt. Let it retract completely and smoothly.

When in use, the rear safety belts should be placed in the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks.

### C-MAX

#### Second row outboard safety belt



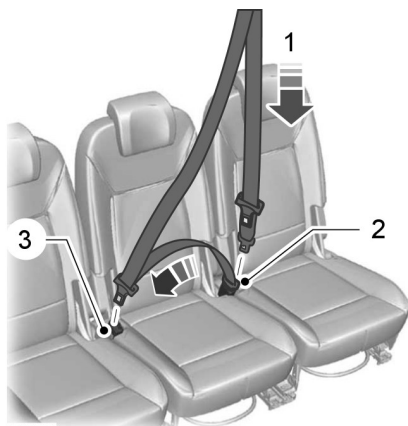
E130033



# Occupant protection

When in use, the rear safety belts should be placed in the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks.

## Second row center safety belt



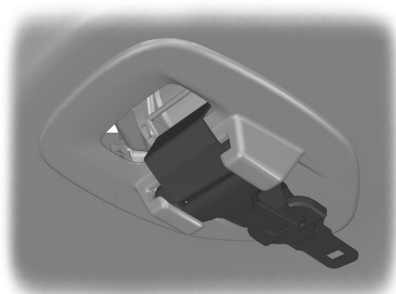
E129522

The retractor for the rear center safety belt is located in the roof.

To fasten the safety belt:

1. Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.
2. Insert the smaller tongue into the black buckle to the left of the center seat.
3. Pull the larger tongue across the lap and insert it into the buckle to the right of the center seat.

**Note:** If in constant use, you can leave the belt buckled in the black buckle. When it is not in use, or when you fold or move the rear seats, you should release the belt from the black buckle.



E129523

Press the red button on the right buckle to release the belt. Let it retract.

Press the button on the side of the black buckle to release the belt. Let it retract completely and smoothly to the retractor in the roof.

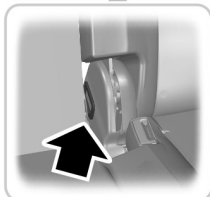
Stow the larger tongue flat against the roof trim.



# Occupant protection

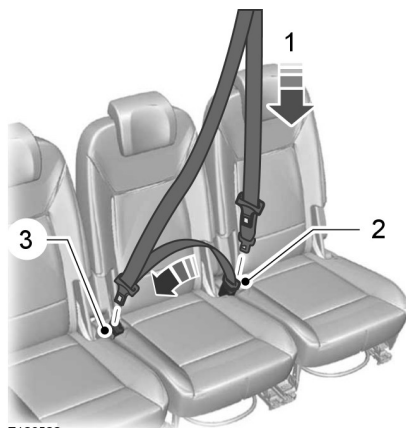
## Grand C-MAX

### Second row center safety belt anchor point



E130029

### Second row center safety belt



E129522

The retractor for the rear center safety belt is located in the roof.

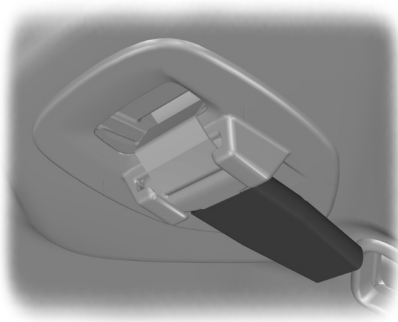
To fasten the safety belt:

1. Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.
2. Securely attach the spring hook to the anchor point.
3. Pull the tongue across the lap and insert it into the buckle to the right of the center seat.

**Note:** *If in constant use, you can leave the belt attached to the anchor point. When it is not in use, or when you fold or move the rear seats, you should release the spring hook from the anchor point.*



# Occupant protection



E129524

Press the red button on the right buckle to release the belt. Let it retract.

Unclip the spring hook to release the belt. Let it retract completely and smoothly to the retractor in the roof.

Stow the tongue securely flat against the roof trim.

## WARNING



Always replace the rubber cover when stowing the belt assembly.



E135424



E135425

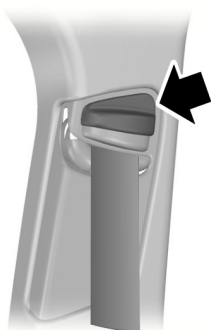
## Third row seat belts

**Note:** When not in use, place the safety belts in the clips on the outboard trim. Make sure that the safety belt tongue is positioned above the clip.



# Occupant protection

## SAFETY BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT



E87511

**Note:** *Lifting the slider slightly while pressing the locking button makes it easier to release the locking mechanism.*

To raise or lower, press the locking button on the adjuster and move as necessary.

## BELT MINDER

### WARNING



The occupant protection system will only provide optimum protection when you use the safety belt properly.



The safety belt reminder warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver's or front seat passenger's safety belt has not been fastened and the vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed. It will also illuminate if the driver's or front seat passenger's

safety belt is unfastened when the vehicle is moving. The audible warning will go off after a few minutes but the safety belt reminder warning lamp will remain on until the driver's or front seat passenger's safety belt is fastened.

## Deactivating the safety belt reminder

See your dealer.

## Grand C-MAX only

### Rear safety belt reminder

#### WARNING



If multiple belts are unfastened within a few seconds of each other, only one audible chime will sound.

**Note:** *Press the **OK** button on the steering wheel control to confirm the message.*

A visual reminder of the safety belt status will be shown on the instrument display once the engine is started, and once again if any are unfastened when the vehicle is moving.

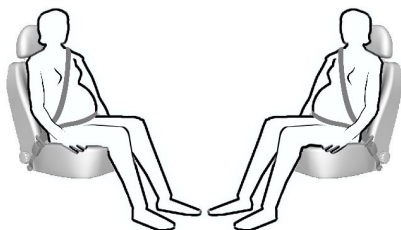
Fastened safety belts are indicated by a tick symbol.

If a belt is unfastened when the vehicle is moving, the safety belt status screen will be displayed and the relevant seats will be highlighted by an exclamation mark. An audible chime will also sound.



## Occupant protection

### USING SAFETY BELTS DURING PREGNANCY



E68587

#### WARNING



Position the safety belt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Position the lap strap comfortably across your hips and low beneath your pregnant abdomen. Position the shoulder strap between your breasts, above and to the side of your pregnant abdomen.

### DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG

#### WARNING



Make sure that the passenger airbag is disabled when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat.



E71313

### Fitting the passenger airbag deactivation switch

#### WARNING



If you need to fit a child restraint on a seat protected by an operational airbag in front of it, have a passenger airbag deactivation switch fitted. Ask your dealer for further information.

**Note:** The key switch is located at the end of the instrument panel on the side of the glove compartment. The airbag deactivation lamp is located between the sun visors.



E130110

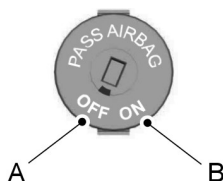


## Occupant protection

---

If the airbag warning lamp illuminates or flashes when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 77). Remove the child restraint and have the system checked immediately.

### Disabling the passenger airbag



E71312

- A Disabled
- B Enabled

Turn the switch to position **A**.

When you switch the ignition on, check that the passenger airbag deactivation warning lamp illuminates.

### Enabling the passenger airbag

#### WARNING



Make sure that the passenger airbag is enabled when you are **not** using a child restraint on the front passenger seat.

Turn the switch to position **B**.



# Locks

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

### CAUTION



Check your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

**Note:** Do not leave your keys in the vehicle.

### Locking

#### Locking with the key

Turn the top of the key towards the front of the vehicle.

#### Locking with the remote control

**Note:** The driver's door can be locked with the key. This needs to be used if the remote control is not functioning.

**Note:** Your vehicle can be locked with a rear door open. The door will be locked when it is closed.



Press the button.

### Double locking

### WARNING



Do not activate double locking when persons or animals are inside the vehicle. You will not be able to unlock the doors from the inside if you have double locked them.

**Note:** If you double lock your vehicle whilst inside, switch the ignition on to return the door locks to a single locked state.

**Note:** Your vehicle can be double locked with a rear door open. The door will be double locked when it is closed.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside.

### Double locking with the key

Turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds.

### Double locking with the remote control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

### Unlocking

#### Unlocking with the key

Turn the top of the key towards the rear of the vehicle.

#### Unlocking with the remote control

**Note:** The driver's door can be unlocked with the key. This needs to be used if the remote control is not functioning.

**Note:** If the vehicle remains locked for several weeks, the remote control will be disabled. The vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting the vehicle once will enable the remote control.



Press the button.

### Automatic relocking

The doors will relock automatically if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm will return to their previous state.

### Reprogramming the unlocking function

The unlocking function may be reprogrammed so that only the driver's door is unlocked ( ).



# Locks

## Locking and unlocking confirmation

**Note:** If your vehicle has double locking, the direction indicators will only flash twice once you have activated double locking.

When you lock the doors, the direction indicators will flash once.

When you double lock the doors, the direction indicators will flash three times.

When you unlock the doors, the direction indicators will flash once.

## Locking and unlocking the doors from inside



Press the button. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9).

## Sliding door

**Note:** The sliding door is inhibited from opening fully when the fuel filler flap is open.

### Opening the sliding door

Pull the exterior handle or press the interior button, and open the door. If opened fully it will lock in place.

### Closing the sliding door

Pull the exterior handle or press the interior button, and close the door.

## Luggage compartment lid

### Power liftgate

#### WARNINGS



Do not operate the luggage compartment lid unless it is free from obstruction.



Careless opening and closing of the luggage compartment lid can override the protection function and cause injuries.

#### WARNINGS



Do not place objects on the luggage compartment lid.



Make sure the luggage compartment lid is fully closed after operation.

#### CAUTIONS



Operate the luggage compartment lid only when your vehicle is stationary.



Make sure there is enough headroom to open the luggage compartment lid.



On vehicles with automatic transmission, make sure the selector lever is in **P**.



In extreme weather conditions, automatic opening and closing will not work if the luggage compartment lid is frozen to the seal.

**Note:** The luggage compartment lid will stop automatically while opening, and reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

**Note:** The luggage compartment lid will stop automatically while closing, and fully open if there is an obstacle in the way.

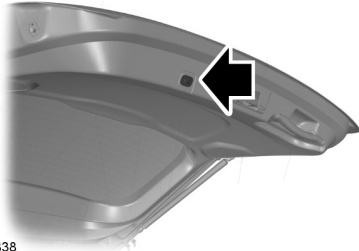
**Note:** You can manually move the luggage compartment lid.

The luggage compartment lid can be operated using the remote control, the center console switch, the luggage compartment lid switch or the luggage compartment lid release handle.



# Locks

## Luggage compartment lid switch



E129838

## Remote control and center console switch



**Note:** Pressing any button again during operation will stop the luggage compartment lid. A further press will reverse the direction.

**Note:** To operate the center console switch, the ignition must be on.

To open a fully closed luggage compartment lid, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the center console switch or luggage compartment lid release handle.

To fully open a partially opened luggage compartment lid, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press and hold the button on the remote control for at least three seconds.
- Press the center console switch, the luggage compartment lid switch or the luggage compartment lid release handle.

To stop the luggage compartment lid, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control. A further remote control operation will be delayed for approximately three seconds.
- Press the center console switch, the luggage compartment lid switch or the luggage compartment lid release handle.

Programming the luggage compartment lid stop position

1. Open the luggage compartment lid.
2. Stop the luggage compartment lid at the required height.
3. Press and hold the luggage compartment lid switch for at least three seconds. A chime will be heard.

Reprogramming the luggage compartment lid to a new stop position

1. Open the luggage compartment lid.
2. Move the luggage compartment lid to the new required position.
3. Press and hold the luggage compartment lid switch for at least three seconds. A chime will be heard.

## Closing the luggage compartment lid

### WARNINGS



The anti-trap function will be deactivated when the luggage compartment lid comes into contact with the vehicle body.



The luggage compartment lid will not detect obstacles when it comes into contact with the vehicle body.

**Note:** Do not leave a passive key in the vehicle when closing the luggage compartment. A message will be shown in the display. See **Information Messages** (page 87).



# Locks

**Note:** A recessed grip is incorporated inside the luggage compartment lid to facilitate manual closing.

To close the luggage compartment lid, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press and hold the button on the remote control for at least three seconds.
- Press the center console switch, the luggage compartment lid switch or the luggage compartment lid release handle.



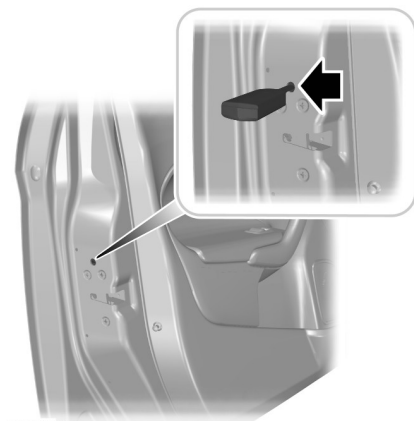
E130232

The luggage compartment lid will close automatically when it comes into contact with the vehicle body.

## Locking the doors individually with the key

**Note:** If the central locking function fails to operate, the doors can be individually locked using the key in the position shown.

## C-MAX



E112203

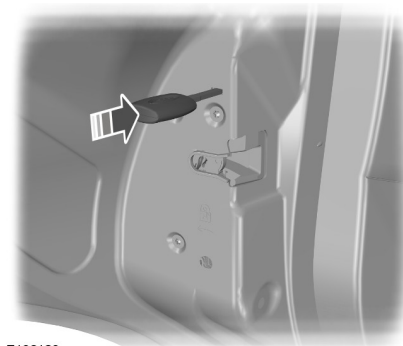
### Left-hand side

Turn clockwise to lock.

### Right-hand side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

## Grand C-MAX



E130123

Push to lock.



# Locks

## Unlocking

**Note:** If the child safety locks have also been activated, pulling the internal lever will only deactivate the emergency locking and not the child safety lock. The doors can only be opened using the external door handle.

**Note:** If the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.

Unlock the driver's door using the key. The other doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

## KEYLESS ENTRY

### General information

#### WARNING



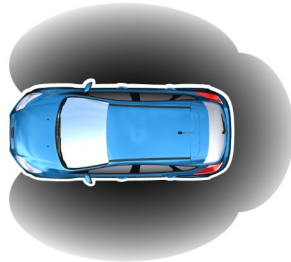
The keyless entry system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cell phones.

The passive entry system will not function if:

- The vehicle battery is flat.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery is flat.

**Note:** If the passive entry system does not function, you will need to use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

The keyless system allows the driver to operate the vehicle without the use of a key or remote control.



E78276

Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges. These are located approximately one and a half meters from the driver and front passenger door handles and the luggage compartment lid.

### Passive key

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked with the passive key. The passive key can also be used as a remote control. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 35).

### Locking the vehicle

#### WARNING



The vehicle does not lock itself automatically. If the locking function is not activated, the vehicle will remain unlocked.

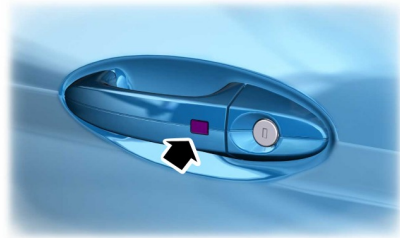
**Note:** The ignition will automatically switch off when you lock your vehicle from the outside. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging.

**Note:** Do not grab the door handle.

**Note:** Keep the door handle surface clean to make sure the system operates correctly.



# Locks



E87384

Touch a front door handle lock sensor to lock the vehicle.

To activate central locking and arm the alarm:

- Touch a front door handle lock sensor once.

To activate double locking and arm the alarm:

- Touch a front door handle lock sensor twice within three seconds.

**Note:** There must be clearance between each touch of the door handle.

**Note:** Once activated, the vehicle will remain locked for a few seconds. When the delay period is over, the doors can be opened again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

Two short flashes of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the luggage compartment lid have been locked and that the alarm has been armed.

## Luggage compartment lid

**Note:** The luggage compartment lid cannot be closed and, will pop back up if the passive key is located inside the vehicle with the doors locked.

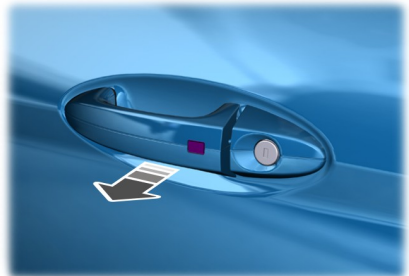
**Note:** If a second valid passive key is located within the rear exterior detection range, the luggage compartment lid can be closed.

## Unlocking the vehicle

**Note:** If the vehicle remains locked for longer than three days, the keyless system will enter an energy-saving mode. This is to reduce the discharge of the vehicle battery. When the vehicle is unlocked while in this mode, the reaction time of the system may be a little longer than normal. Unlocking the vehicle once will deactivate the energy-saving mode.

**Note:** If the vehicle remains locked for several weeks, the keyless system will be disabled. The vehicle must be unlocked using the key blade. Unlocking the vehicle once will enable the keyless system.

**Note:** Do not touch the front door handle lock sensor when opening a door.



E78278

Open any door.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door.

One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the luggage compartment lid have been unlocked and that the alarm has been disarmed.

## Unlocking only the driver's door

If the unlocking function is reprogrammed so that only the driver's door and the luggage compartment lid are unlocked ( ), note the following:



# Locks

If the driver's door is the first door which is opened, the other doors will remain locked. All the other doors can be unlocked from inside the vehicle by pressing the unlock button on the instrument panel. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9). Doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

## Disabled keys

Any keys left inside the vehicle interior when it is locked will be disabled.

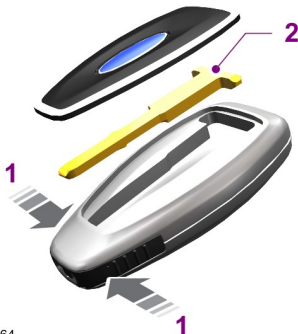
A disabled key cannot be used to turn the ignition on or start the engine.

In order to use these passive keys again, they have to be enabled.

To enable all your passive keys, unlock the vehicle using a passive key or the remote control unlocking function.

All passive keys will then be enabled if the ignition is turned on or the vehicle is started using a valid key.

## Locking and unlocking the doors with the key blade



E87964

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade and insert it into the lock.

**Note:** Only the driver's door handle is fitted with a lock cylinder.

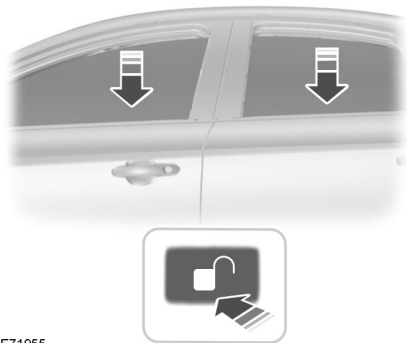
## GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can also operate the power windows with the ignition off via the global opening and global closing function.

**Note:** Global opening will only operate for a short period of time after you have unlocked your vehicle using the remote control.

**Note:** Global closing will only operate if you have set the memory correctly for each window. See **Power Windows** (page 69).

## Global opening



E71955

To open all the windows, press and hold the remote control **unlock** button for at least three seconds. Press the lock or unlock button to stop the opening function.



# Locks

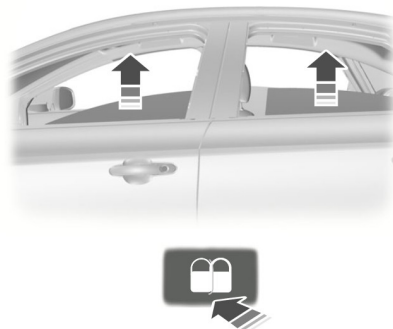
## Global closing

### Vehicles without keyless entry

#### WARNING



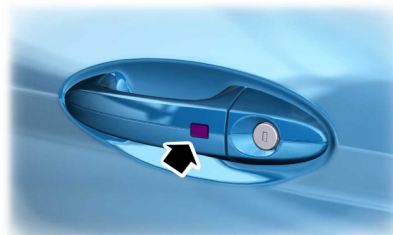
Take care when using global closing. In an emergency, press the lock or unlock button immediately to stop.



E71956

To close all the windows, press and hold the remote control **lock** button for at least three seconds. Press the lock or unlock button to stop the closing function. The anti-trap function is also active during global closing.

### Vehicles with keyless entry



E87384

#### WARNING



Take care when using global closing. In an emergency, touch a door handle lock sensor to stop.

**Note:** *Global closing can be activated using the driver's door handle. Global opening and closing can also be activated using the buttons on the passive key.*

To close all the windows, press and hold the driver's door handle for at least two seconds. The anti-trap function is also active during global closing.



# Engine immobilizer

---

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The engine immobilizer is a theft protection system that prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

## CODED KEYS

**Note:** *Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognizing your key as a valid one.*

**Note:** *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Ask your dealer for further information. Have replacement keys recoded together with your existing keys.*

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from your Ford Dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain additional keys from your Ford Dealer.

## ARMING THE ENGINE IMMOBILIZER

The engine immobilizer is armed automatically a short time after you have switched the ignition off.

## DISARMING THE ENGINE IMMOBILIZER

The engine immobilizer is disarmed automatically when you switch the ignition on with a correctly coded key.



# Alarm

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Alarm system

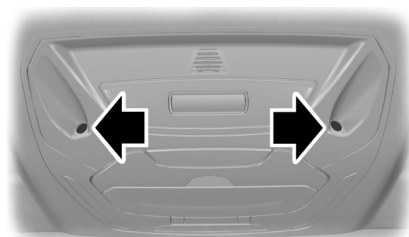
Your vehicle may be equipped with one of the following alarm systems:

- Perimeter alarm.
- Perimeter alarm with interior sensors.
- Category one alarm with interior sensors and battery back-up sounder.

### Perimeter alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

### Interior sensors



E129005

### WARNING



The sensors in the interior lamp unit must not be covered up. Do not activate the alarm with full guard if any persons, animals or other moving objects are inside the vehicle.

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized intrusion by sensing any movement within the vehicle.

### Battery back-up sounder

The battery back-up sounder is an extra alarm system which will sound a siren when the alarm is triggered. It is armed directly when you lock the vehicle. The sounder has its own battery and will sound an alarm siren even if someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

### Triggering the alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the tailgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio or navigation system.
- If the ignition is turned to position **I**, **II** or **III** without a valid key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within the vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

### Full and reduced guard

#### Full guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are activated when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** *This may result in false alarms if animals or moving objects are inside the vehicle.*



# Alarm

---

**Note:** False alarms can also be triggered by the auxiliary heater. See **Auxiliary Heater** (page 102). If you are using the auxiliary heater, direct the air flow towards the footwell.

## Reduced guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are deactivated when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** You can set the alarm to reduced guard for the current ignition cycle only. The next time you switch on the ignition, the alarm will be reset to full guard.

## Ask on Exit

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

If you select **Ask on Exit**, the message **Reduced guard?** appears in the instrument cluster display each time you switch the ignition off.

If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the **OK** button when this message appears.

If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave the vehicle without pressing the **OK** button.

## Selecting full or reduced guard

**Note:** Selecting **Reduced** does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current ignition cycle. If you regularly set the alarm to reduced guard, select **Ask on Exit**.

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 81).

## Information messages

See **Information Messages** (page 87).

## ARMING THE ALARM

To arm the alarm, lock the vehicle. See **Locks** (page 35).

## DISARMING THE ALARM

### Vehicles without keyless entry

#### Perimeter alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key, or unlocking the doors or the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.

#### Category one alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key within 12 seconds, or unlocking the doors or the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.

### Vehicles with keyless entry

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 39).

#### Perimeter alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching the ignition on, or unlocking the doors or the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.

#### Category one alarm


Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching the ignition on within 12 seconds, or unlocking the doors or the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.



# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL


### WARNING

 Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 105).



### WARNING

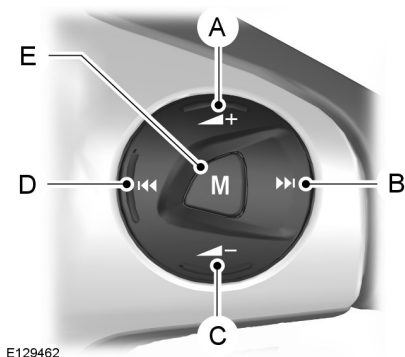
 Make sure that you fully engage the locking lever when returning it to its original position.

## AUDIO CONTROL

Select the required source on the audio unit.

The following functions can be operated with the remote control:

### Type 1



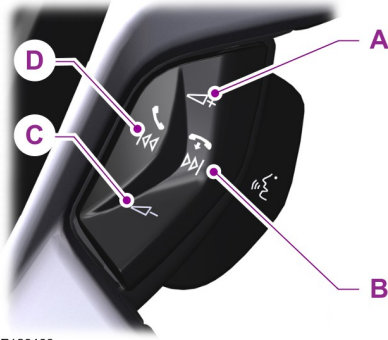
- A Volume up
- B Seek up or next
- C Volume down
- D Seek down or previous
- E Mode

Press the mode button to select the audio source.



# Steering Wheel

## Type 2



E129463

- A Volume up
- B Seek up or next
- C Volume down
- D Seek down or previous

## VOICE CONTROL



E129464

Pull the button to select or deselect voice control. See **SYNC™** (page 255). See **SYNC™** (page 255).

## Seek, next or previous

Press the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset
- play the next or the previous track.

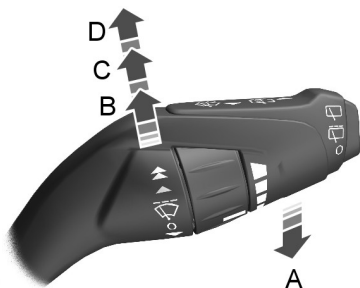
Press and **hold** the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band
- seek through a track.



# Wipers and Washers

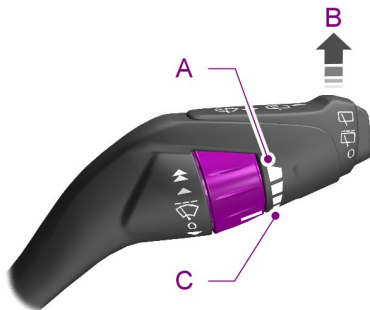
## WINDSHIELD WIPERS



E128444

- A Single wipe
- B Intermittent wipe or autowipers
- C Normal wipe
- D High speed wipe

## Intermittent wipe



E128445

- A Short wipe interval
- B Intermittent wipe
- C Long wipe interval

The rotary control can be used to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

## Automatic wiper system

Some models without autowipers are fitted with a speed-dependent front windshield wiper system.

When the vehicle is slowed to walking speed or is brought to a standstill, the wiper speed will automatically switch to the next lower wiper speed setting.

When the vehicle speed is increased, the wiper speed will return to the manually-chosen setting.

Moving the wiper lever when the system is operating will switch off the system.

If the vehicle is again slowed to walking speed or is brought to a standstill, the system is reactivated.

## AUTOWIPERS

### CAUTIONS

! Do not switch autowipers on in dry weather conditions. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

! Replace the wiper blades as soon as they begin to leave bands of water and smears. If you do not replace them, the rain sensor will continue to detect water on the windshield and the wipers will operate, even though the majority of the windshield is dry.

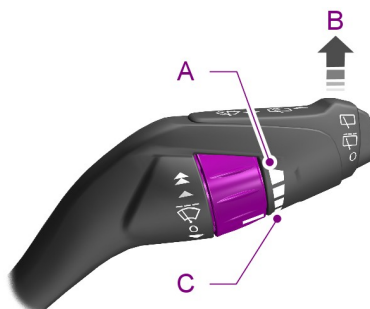
! Fully defrost the windshield in icy conditions before you switch autowipers on.

! Switch autowipers off before you enter a car wash.

**Note:** If autolamps have been switched on in conjunction with autowipers, low beam headlamps will illuminate automatically when the rain sensor activates the windshield wipers continuously.



# Wipers and Washers



E128445

- A High sensitivity
- B On
- C Low sensitivity

If you switch autowipers on, the wipers will not cycle until water is detected on the windshield. The rain sensor will then continuously measure the amount of water on the windshield and adjust the speed of the wipers automatically.

Adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor using the rotary control. With low sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a lot of water on the windshield. With high sensitivity, the wipers will operate if the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

## WINDSHIELD WASHERS



E129188

### WARNING



Do not operate the washer for more than 10 seconds at a time, and never when the reservoir is empty.

Whilst the lever is pulled towards the steering wheel the washer will work in conjunction with the wipers.

After releasing the lever, the wipers operate for a short time.

## REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

### Intermittent wipe



E129193

- A Intermittent wipe
- B Low speed wipe

Press the button at the end of the lever to change between off, intermittent and low speed.

### Reverse gear wipe

The rear wiper will be activated automatically when selecting reverse gear if the rear wiper is not already switched on and the front wiper is operating.



# Wipers and Washers

## Rear window washer



E129194

### WARNING



Do not operate the washer for more than 10 seconds at a time, and never when the reservoir is empty.

While the lever is pushed away from the steering wheel the washer will work in conjunction with the wipers.

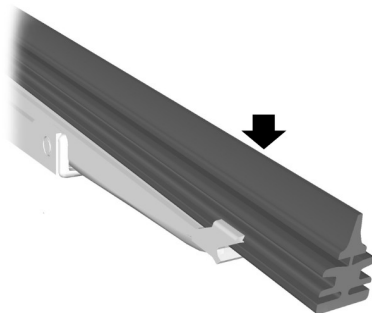
After releasing the lever, the wipers operate for a short time.

## HEADLAMP WASHERS

The headlamp washers will operate with the windshield washers when the headlamps are on.

**Note:** To stop the washer fluid reservoir emptying quickly, the headlamp washers will not operate every time that you use the windshield washers.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E66644

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blade lips with water applied with a soft sponge.

## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

### Windshield wiper blades

#### CAUTIONS



Set the windshield wipers in the service position to change the wiper blades.



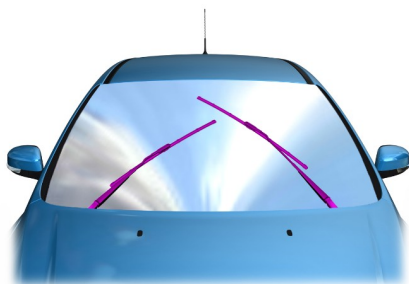
You can use the service position in winter to provide easier access to the wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice. The windshield wipers will return to their normal position as soon as you switch on the ignition so make sure that the outside of the windshield is free from snow and ice before you switch on the ignition.



# Wipers and Washers

**Note:** The windshield wiper blades are different in length. See **Technical Specifications** (page 52). If you install wiper blades of the wrong length, the rain sensor may not work correctly.

## Service position



E129989

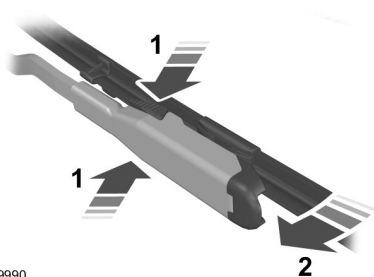


E129986

Switch off the ignition and move the wiper lever to position **A** within three seconds. Release the lever when the windshield wipers have moved to the service position.

## Changing the windshield wiper blades

Set the windshield wipers in the service position and lift the wiper arms.



E129990

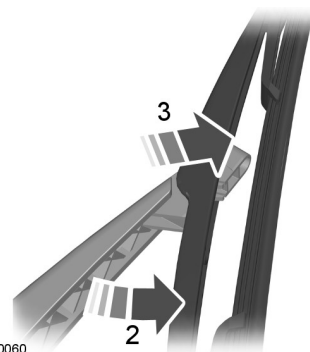
1. Press the locking buttons together.
2. Rotate and remove the wiper blade.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

3. Install in the reverse order.

## Rear window wiper blade

1. Lift the wiper arm.



E130060

2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
3. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

5. Install in the reverse order.



# Wipers and Washers

---

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Windshield wiper blade lengths

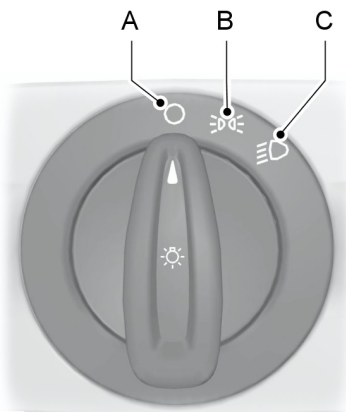
Dimension in mm (inches)	
Driver side	Passenger side
730 (28.7)	630 (24.8)



# Lighting

## LIGHTING CONTROL

### Lighting control positions



E70718

- A Off
- B Side and tail lamps
- C Headlamps

### Parking lamps

#### CAUTION

⚠ Prolonged use of the parking lamps will discharge the battery.

Switch off the ignition.

#### Both sides

Turn the switch to position **B**.

### One side



E130139

- A Right-hand side
- B Left-hand side

### High and low beam



E130140

Push the lever forward to switch between high and low beam.

### Headlamp flasher

Pull the lever slightly towards the steering wheel.



# Lighting

## Home safe lighting

Switch the ignition off and pull the direction indicator lever towards the steering wheel to switch the headlamps on. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will go off automatically after three minutes with any door open, or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed.

The home safe lights can be cancelled by either pulling the direction indicator lever towards the steering wheel again or by turning the ignition switch ON.

## AUTOLAMPS

### WARNING



In severe weather conditions, it may be necessary to switch your headlamps on manually.

**Note:** If you have switched autolamps on, you can only switch the high beam on when autolamps has switched the headlamps on.

**Note:** If autolamps have been switched on in conjunction with autowipers, low beam headlamps will illuminate automatically when the rain sensor activates the windshield wipers continuously.



E70719

The headlamps will come on and go off automatically depending on the ambient light.

The headlamps will remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. You can adjust the time delay using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 81).

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. A manual override may be necessary if the system fails to switch the high beam on or off.



A manual override may be required when approaching other road users such as cyclists.



Do not use the system in fog.



In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. A manual override may be necessary in these cases.



The system may not deactivate the high beam if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles (for example guard rails).



Check and replace wiper blades regularly to ensure the camera sensor has a clear view through the windscreen. Replacement wiper blades must be the correct length.

**Note:** Keep the windscreen free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** Reflective road signs may be detected as oncoming traffic and the headlamps will be switched to low beam.

**Note:** Always fit Ford Original Parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.



# Lighting

The system will automatically switch on high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead the system will switch off high beam before it can distract other road users. Low beam will remain on.

A camera sensor is centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle. This monitors conditions continuously to decide when to switch the high beams on and off.

Once the system is active the high beam will switch on if:

- It is dark enough to require the use of high beams and
- there is no traffic or street lighting ahead and
- vehicle speed is greater than 25 mph (40 km/h).

The high beam will switch off if:

- The ambient light is high enough that high beam is not required.
- An approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps are detected.
- Street lighting is detected.
- Vehicle speed falls below 16 mph (25 km/h).
- The camera sensor is too hot or becomes blocked.

## Switching the System On

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 81).



E70719

Turn the switch to the autolamps position. See **Autolamps** (page 54).



The indicator will illuminate to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

**Note:** The indicator will only illuminate when it is dark and headlamps have been switched on.

**Note:** The system may take a short time to initialize after first switching the ignition on, especially in very dark conditions. The high beam will not automatically switch on during this time.

## Setting the System Sensitivity

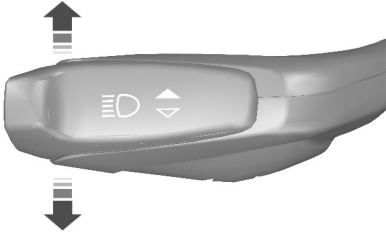
The system has three sensitivity levels which can be accessed via the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 81).

The set level determines the speed at which the high beam will be restored after detected traffic leaves the field of view.



# Lighting

## Manually Overriding the System



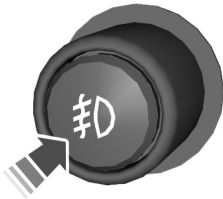
E133632

Push or pull the lever to switch between high and low beam.

**Note:** This is a temporary override and the system will return to automatic operation after a short period.

To permanently switch the system off, use the information display menu or turn the lighting control switch to the headlamps position.

## FRONT FOG LAMPS



E70721

### WARNING



Only use the front fog lamps when visibility is considerably restricted by fog, snow or rain.

## REAR FOG LAMPS



E70720

### WARNINGS



Only use the rear fog lamps when visibility is restricted to less than 50 meters (164 feet).



Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 50 meters (164 feet).

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING/HIGH INTENSITY DISCHARGE HEADLAMPS

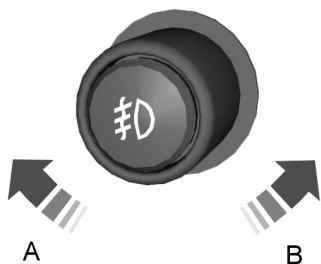
To adjust the headlamps for driving on the left or right hand side of the road, see your dealer.

## HEADLAMP LEVELING

**Note:** Vehicles with Xenon headlamps are equipped with automatic headlamp leveling.



# Lighting



- A Raised headlamp beams
- B Lowered headlamp beams

You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to the vehicle load.

E70722

## Recommended headlamp leveling switch positions

Load			Load in luggage compartment	Switch position
Front seats	Second row seats	Third row seats		
1-2	-	-	-	0
1-2	-	2	-	0 (0.5)**
1-2	3	-	-	1 (0.5)**
1-2	3	-	Max*	3 (0.5)**
1	-	-	Max*	4 (1.5)**

\* See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 221).

\*\* Vehicles with active suspension.

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS



For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9).



# Lighting

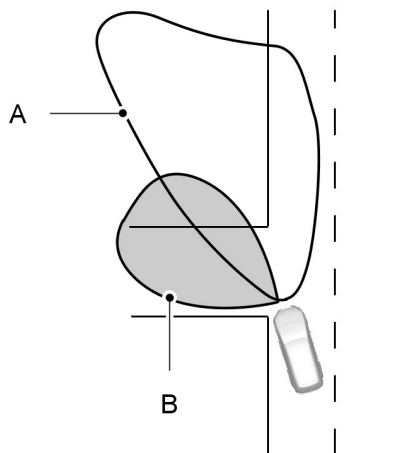
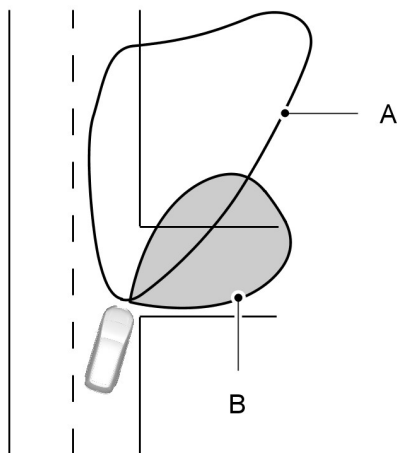
## DIRECTION INDICATORS

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash only three times.



E130141

## CORNERING LAMPS



E72898

- A Headlamp beam
- B Cornering lamp beam



# Lighting

The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning.

## INTERIOR LAMPS

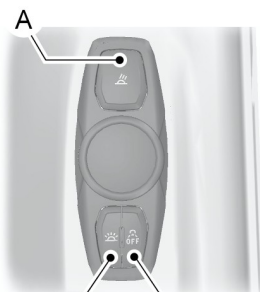
### Interior lighting

**Note:** Individual lamps may be switched on independently, but not off if all lamps have been switched on by the driver.

**Note:** All other lamps will be either non-switchable or with individual reading or dome lamp functionality only.

The lamps will come on when you unlock or open a door or the luggage compartment lid. If you leave a door open with the ignition switch off, all lamps will go off automatically after some time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch them back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

### Side mounted lamp



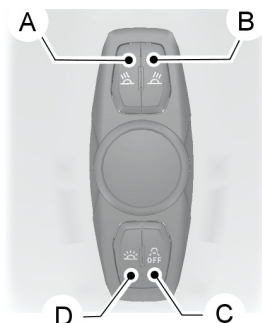
E139419

- A Reading lamp on and off switch
- B Door function switch
- C All lamps on and off switch

If you press switch **B** all lamps remain off when the door is opened. Press the switch again to reverse.

You can control all lamps using switch **C**.

### Center mounted lamp



E139420

- A Right-hand side reading lamp on and off switch
- B Left-hand side reading lamp on and off switch
- C Door function switch
- D All lamps on and off switch

If you press switch **C** all lamps remain off when the door is opened. Press the switch again to reverse.

You can control all lamps using switch **D**.

### Ambient lighting

If you leave a door open with the ignition switch off, the ambient lamp will go off automatically after some time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging.

If dark, the ambient lights are active if the ignition and headlamps are switched on.



# Lighting

Ambient lighting illuminates several areas, for example footwells, cup holders and doors with a single color and can be switched on and off using the information display menu. See **General Information** (page 81).

Use the instrument lighting dimmer switches to adjust to the desired brightness. See **Instrument Lighting Dimmer** (page 118).

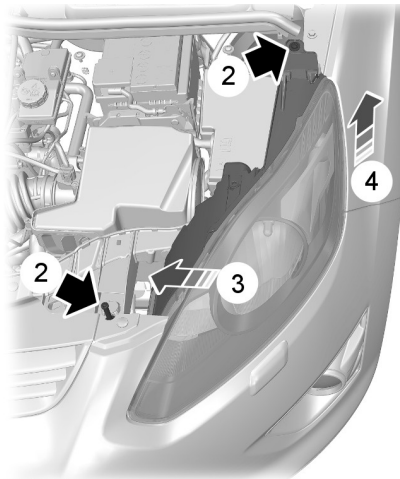
## REMOVING A HEADLAMP

### WARNING



Have Xenon bulbs changed by a trained technician. There is a risk of electric shock.

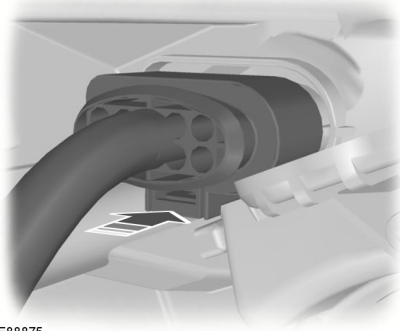
1. Open the hood. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 188).



E130143

2. Remove the screws.

3. Pull the headlamp as far as possible towards the center of the vehicle to disengage it from the lower fixing point.
4. Lift the outer side of the headlamp and remove it.



E88875

5. Disconnect the electrical connector.

**Note:** When fitting the headlamp, make sure that you reconnect the electrical connector properly.

**Note:** When fitting the headlamp, make sure that you fully engage the headlamp in the lower fixing point.

**Note:** When fitting the headlamp, make sure that the screw is located in the headlamp molding before you install it.

## CHANGING A BULB

### WARNINGS



Switch the lights and the ignition off.



Let the bulb cool down before removing it.



Have Xenon bulbs changed by a properly trained technician. There is a risk of electric shock.



# Lighting

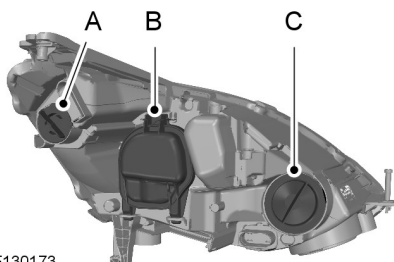
## CAUTIONS

- ❗ Do not touch the glass of the bulb.
- ❗ Only fit bulbs of the correct specification. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 67).

**Note:** The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Fit replacements in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

## Headlamp

**Note:** Remove the covers to gain access to the bulbs.

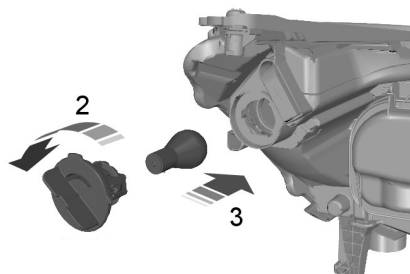


E130173

- A Direction indicator
- B Headlamp high beam
- C Headlamp low beam

## Direction indicator

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 60).



E130174

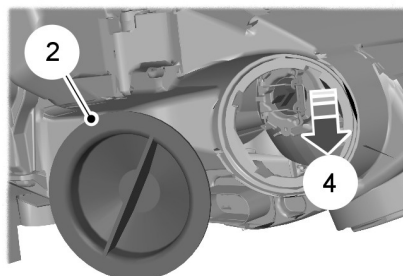
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it counterclockwise and remove it.

## Headlamp high beam

### CAUTION

- ❗ Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 60).



E130175



# Lighting

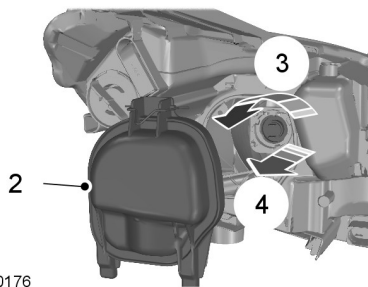
2. Remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

## Headlamp low beam

### CAUTION

- ! Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 60).

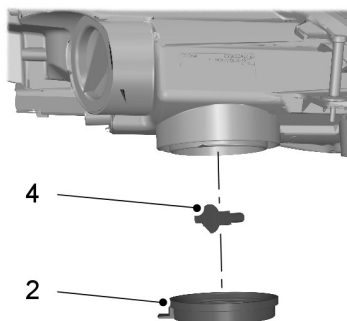


E130176

2. Remove the cover.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the bulb.

## Cornering lamp

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 60).

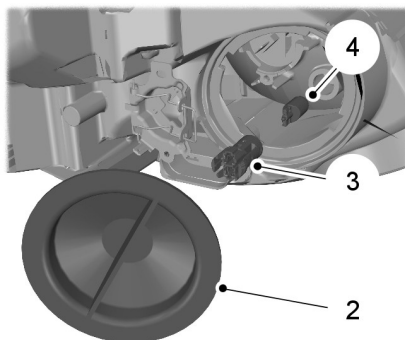


E130177

2. Remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

## Side lamp

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 60).



E130181

2. Remove the cover.
3. Remove the bulb holder.
4. Remove the bulb.

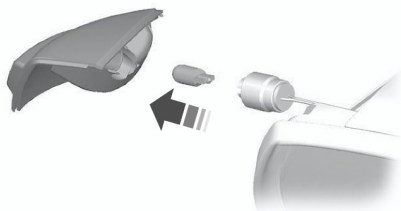


## Side repeater



E72263

1. Carefully remove the side repeater.



E72291

2. Remove the bulb holder.
3. Remove the bulb.

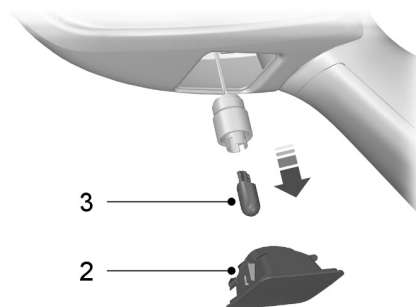
## Approach lamp

**Note:** Position the mirror glass as far inwards as possible.



E72264

1. Insert a screwdriver into the gap between the mirror housing and the mirror glass and release the metal retaining clip.



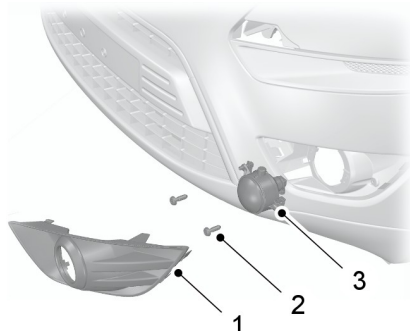
E72265

2. Remove the lamp.
3. Remove the bulb.



# Lighting

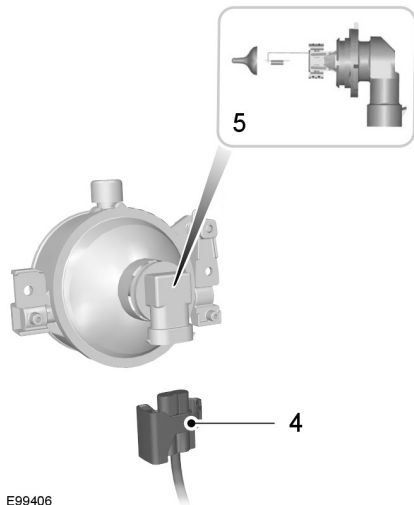
## Front fog lamps



E99405

**Note:** You cannot separate the fog lamp bulb from the bulb holder.

1. Using a suitable implement, remove the cover.
2. Remove the screws.
3. Remove the lamp.



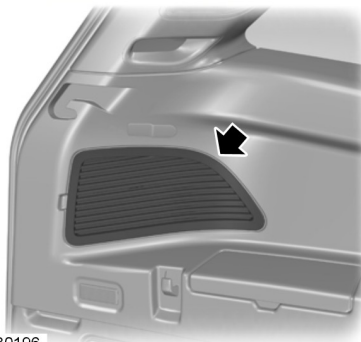
E99406

4. Disconnect the electrical connector.

5. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

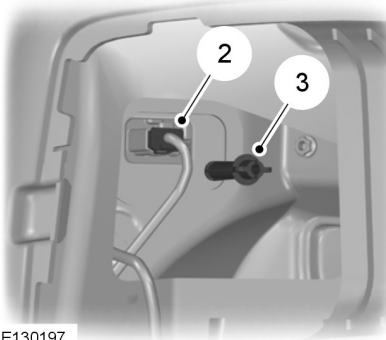
## Rear lamps

### Direction indicator, tail and brake lamp



E130196

1. Remove the trim panel.

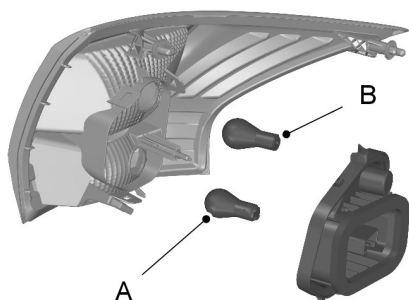


E130197

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Remove the wing nut.
4. Remove the lamp.



# Lighting



E130198

5. Remove the bulb holder.
6. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it counterclockwise and remove it.

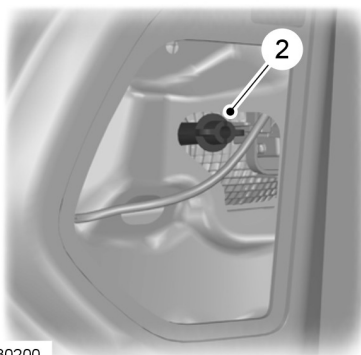
A. Rear and brake lamp  
B. Direction indicator

## Reversing lamp, tail lamp and fog lamp



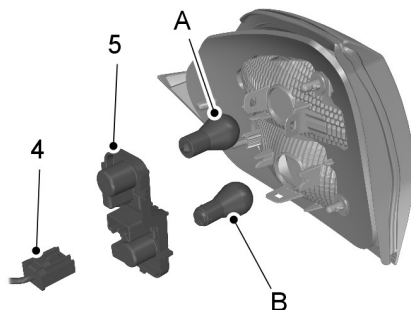
E130199

1. Remove the trim panel.



E130200

2. Remove the wing nut.
3. Remove the lamp.



E130201

4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
  5. Remove the bulb holder.
  6. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it counterclockwise and remove it.
- A. Reversing lamp  
B. Tail and fog lamp



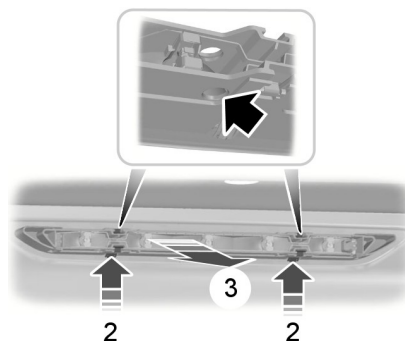
# Lighting

## Central high mounted brake lamp



E87619

1. Detach the clips.



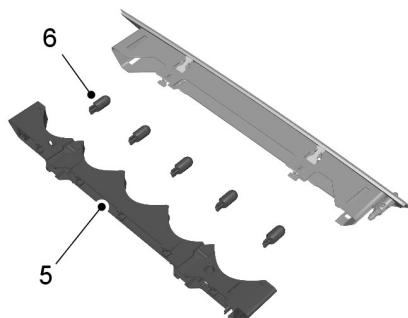
E130235

2. Insert a suitable object into the holes.
3. Carefully pull the lamp towards the front of the vehicle to release the spring clips.



E130236

4. Remove the lamp.



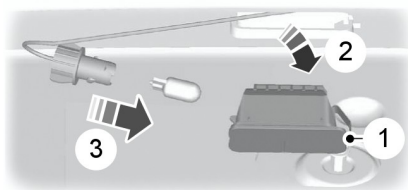
E130205

5. Remove the bulb holder.
6. Remove the bulb.



# Lighting

## License plate lamp



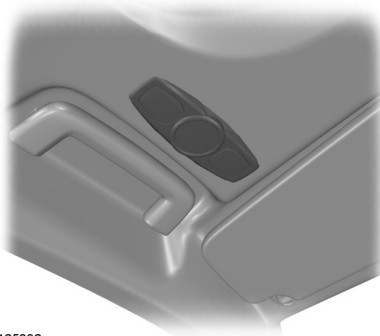
E72789

1. Carefully release the spring clip.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and remove it.

## Interior lamps

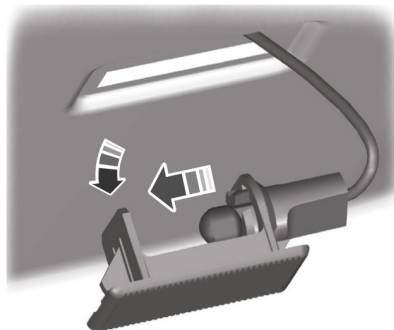
### Vehicles with LED lamps

**Note:** The LED board is not a serviceable item, please consult your dealer if this fails.



E125092

### Luggage compartment lamp, footwell lamp and tailgate lamp



E72784

1. Carefully prise out the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.

## BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Front direction indicator	PY21W	21
Headlamp high beam	H1	55
Headlamp low beam	H7	55 <sup>1</sup>



# Lighting

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Cornering lamp	H1	55
Front fog lamp	H11	55
Side lamp	W5W	5
Side repeater	WY5W	5
Approach lamp	W5W	5
Rear direction indicator	PY21W	21
Brake and tail lamp	P21/5W	21/5
Tail lamp	W5W	5
Rear fog lamp	P21W	21
Reversing lamp	P21W	21
License plate lamp	W5W	5
Central high mounted stop lamp	W5W	5
Luggage compartment lamp	W5W	5

<sup>1</sup>Fit a replacement with the same rating as the one you have removed.



# Windows and Mirrors

## POWER WINDOWS

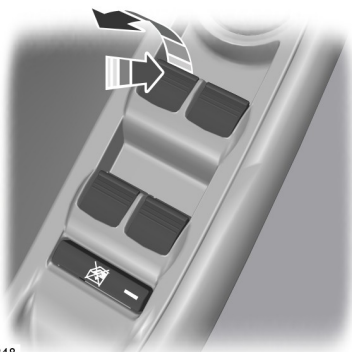
### WARNINGS



Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E70848

**Note:** You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.

Press the switch to open the window.

Lift the switch to close the window.

### One-Touch Down (If Equipped)

Press the switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### One-Touch Up (If Equipped)

Lift the switch fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

## Window Lock



E70850

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It will illuminate when the rear window controls are locked.

### Bounce-Back (If Equipped)

The window will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

### Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

#### WARNING



When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Proceed as follows to override this protection feature when there is a resistance, for example in winter:

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.



# Windows and Mirrors

2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. The bounce-back feature is now disabled and you can close the window manually. The window will go past the point of resistance and you can close it fully.

See an authorized dealer as soon as possible if the window does not close after the third attempt.

## Resetting the Bounce-Back Feature

### WARNING



The bounce-back feature remains turned off until you reset the memory.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.
3. Lift the switch again for one more second.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open.
5. Release the switch.
6. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
7. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
8. Reset and repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

## Accessory Delay (If Equipped)

You can use the window switches for several minutes after you have switched the ignition off or until either front door is opened.

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### WARNING



Do not overestimate the distance of the objects that you see in the convex mirror. Objects seen in convex mirrors will appear smaller and further away than they actually are.

## Manual folding mirrors

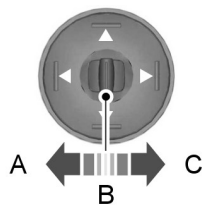
### Folding

Push the mirror towards the door window glass.

### Unfolding

Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

## POWER EXTERIOR MIRRORS



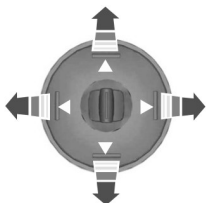
E70846

- A Left-hand mirror
- B Off
- C Right-hand mirror



# Windows and Mirrors

## Mirror tilting positions



E70847

The power exterior mirrors are fitted with a heating element that will defrost or demist the mirror glass. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 102).

## Power folding mirrors

### Automatic folding and unfolding

**Note:** *If the mirrors have been folded using the manual fold button they can only be unfolded using the manual fold button.*

The mirrors will fold automatically when you lock the vehicle with the key, the remote control or a keyless entry system request. The mirrors will unfold when you unlock the vehicle with the key, the remote control, a keyless entry system request, the driver's interior door handle or starting the engine.

### Manual folding and unfolding

The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on.

**Note:** *You can operate the mirrors (mirror tilting and folding) for several minutes after you switch off the ignition. They will be deactivated as soon as a door is opened.*



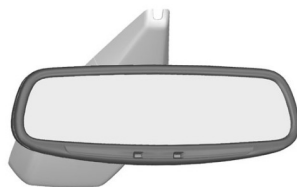
E72623

Press the button to fold or unfold the mirrors.

If you press the switch again while the mirrors are moving, they will stop and reverse the direction of movement.

**Note:** *When the mirrors are operated often during a short period of time, the system may become inoperable for a period of time to prevent damage due to overheating.*

## AUTO-DIMMING MIRROR



E71028

The auto-dimming mirror will adjust automatically when hit by glaring light from behind. It will not work when you have selected reverse gear.



# Windows and Mirrors

## BLIND SPOT MONITOR

### Blind spot information system (BLIS)

#### WARNINGS

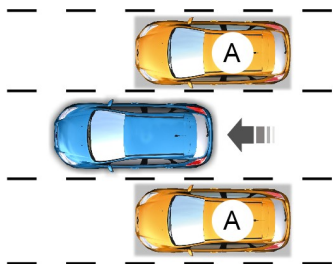


The system is not designed to prevent contact with other vehicles or objects. The system only provides a warning to assist you in detecting vehicles in the blind spot zones. The system will not detect obstacles, pedestrians, motorcyclists or cyclists.



Do not use the system as a replacement for using the side and rear view mirrors, and looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The system is not a replacement for careful driving and is only to be used as an aid.

The system is a convenience feature that aids the driver in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (▲). The detection area is on both sides of the vehicle extending rearwards from the exterior mirrors to approximately 3 meters (10 feet) beyond the bumper. The system will alert you if certain vehicles enter the blind spot zone whilst driving.



#### Using the system

The system displays a yellow indicator located in the exterior mirrors.



E 124736

**Note:** Both indicators will illuminate briefly when you switch the ignition on to confirm that the system is operational.

**Note:** On vehicles with automatic transmission, the system is active only in **S**, **D** and **N**.

The system is only active when you exceed 10 km/h (6 mph). The system is temporarily deactivated when you select reverse gear.

#### System detection and alerts

The system will trigger the alert for vehicles that enter the blind spot zone from the rear or merge from the side. Vehicles that you pass, or vehicles that enter the blind spot zone from the front, will only trigger the alert after the vehicle has remained in the blind spot zone for a short period of time.

**Note:** Vehicles that pass through the blind zone quickly (typically less than 2 seconds) will not trigger the alert.

The system consists of two radar sensors each located behind the rear wheels hidden behind the bumpers.

#### CAUTIONS



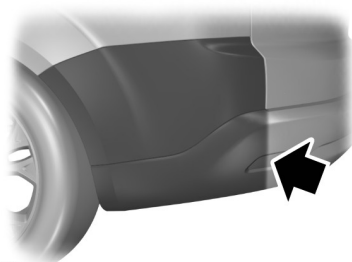
Do not place items such as bumper stickers in this area.



Repairs to these areas using body filler will affect the performance of the system.



# Windows and Mirrors



E124741

## Detection limitations

There may be certain instances where vehicles entering and exiting the blind spot zones may not be detected.

Instances which may cause non-detection:

- Debris build up on the rear bumper panels in the area of the sensors.
- Certain manoeuvring of vehicles entering and exiting the blind zone.
- Vehicles passing through the blind zone at high speed.
- Severe weather conditions.
- Several vehicles passing through the blind zone following each other closely.

## False alerts

**Note:** False alerts are temporary and will self correct.

There may be certain instances when the system will alert with no vehicle present in the blind zone.

Circumstances where false alerts may occur:

- Road guardrails.
- Highway concrete walls.
- Construction areas.
- Sharp turns around a building.
- Bushes and trees.

- Cyclists and motorcyclists.
- Coming to a stop with a vehicle directly behind but very close.

## Turning the system on and off

**Note:** The on or off position will remain until manually changed.

You can turn the system on and off using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 81).

When you turn the system off no further alerts will be received. The BLIS warning indicator will illuminate. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 77).

## Detection errors

**Note:** The alert indicator in the mirror will not illuminate.

If the system senses a fault on either sensor, the system warning symbol will illuminate and remain on. The information display will confirm the fault and indicate whether the left or right side is affected.

## Blocked sensor

### WARNING



Prior to the system recognizing a blocked condition and issuing a warning, the number of missed objects will increase.

### CAUTION



The sensors may not detect vehicles in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.

**Note:** Keep the rear bumper area surrounding the sensors free from dirt, ice and snow.

If a sensor becomes blocked the system performance may degrade. A blocked sensor message may be displayed.



## Windows and Mirrors

---

The system will automatically return to normal operation once two other vehicles have been detected on both sides.

### Trailer towing false alerts

#### CAUTION



Vehicles fitted with a trailer tow module not approved by us may not correctly be detected. Switch the system off to avoid false alerts. See **Information Displays** (page 81).

---

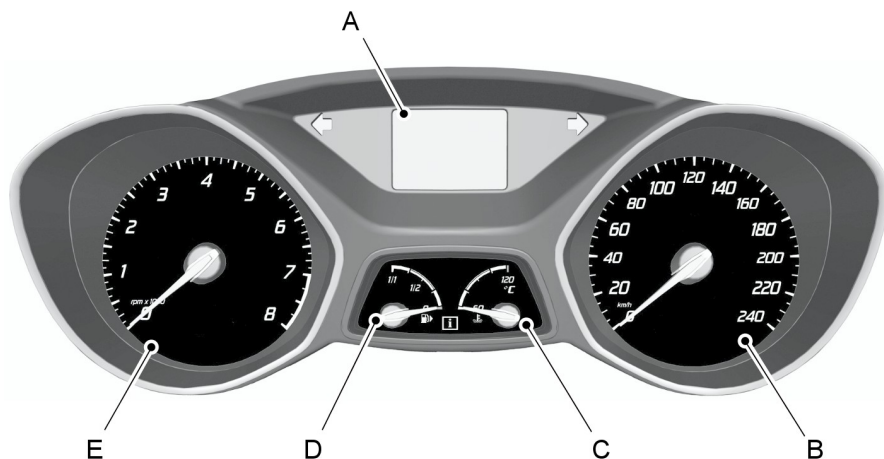
If the vehicle is fitted with a trailer tow module approved by us, the system will detect a connected trailer and deactivate. A confirmation message will be shown in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 87). The BLIS warning indicator will illuminate. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 77).



# Instrument Cluster

## GAUGES

### Type 1



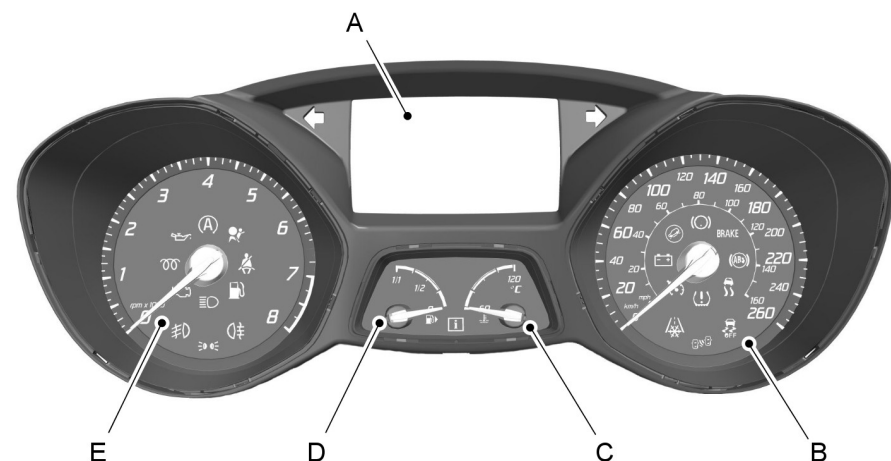
E130149

- A Information display. See **Information Displays** (page 81).
- B Speedometer
- C Engine coolant temperature gauge
- D Fuel gauge
- E Tachometer



# Instrument Cluster

## Type 2



E130150

- A Information display. See **Information Displays** (page 81).
- B Speedometer
- C Engine coolant temperature gauge
- D Fuel gauge
- E Tachometer

## Engine coolant temperature gauge

### All vehicles

Shows the temperature of the engine coolant. At normal operating temperature, the needle will remain in the center section.

### CAUTION



Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been resolved.

If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause **once the engine has cooled down**. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 195).

## Fuel gauge

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of the vehicle the fuel filler cap is located.



# Instrument Cluster

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators illuminate when the ignition is switched on:

- ABS
- Airbag
- Brake system
- ESP off
- Frost
- Low fuel
- Stability control (ESP)

If a warning or indicator lamp does not illuminate when the ignition is switched on, it indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by properly trained technician.

### ABS warning lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have normal braking (without ABS). Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

### Airbag warning lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

### Automatic main beam lamp



It will illuminate when this feature is on. See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 54).

### Blind spot monitor indicator



It will illuminate when this feature is deactivated or in conjunction with a message. See

**Blind Spot Monitor** (page 72). See **Information Messages** (page 87).

### Brake system lamp



It illuminates when the parking brake is engaged.

#### WARNING



Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Use your brakes with care.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

### Cruise control indicator



It will illuminate when you have set a speed using the cruise control system. See **Using**

**Cruise Control** (page 154).

### Direction indicators



Flashes during operation. A sudden increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed

indicator bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 60).



# Instrument Cluster

## Engine warning lamp



If it illuminates with the engine running, this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, **reduce the speed of your vehicle immediately**. If it continues to flash, avoid heavy acceleration or deceleration. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

### CAUTION



If the engine warning lamp illuminates in conjunction with a message, have the system checked as soon as possible.

## Front fog lamp indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## Frost warning lamp

### WARNING



Even if the temperature rises to above 4°C (39°F) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



It will illuminate and glow orange when the outside air temperature is below 4°C (39°F).

## Glow plug indicator



See **Starting a Diesel Engine** (page 125).

## Headlamp indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the headlamp low beam or the side and tail lamps on.

## Ignition warning lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

## Low fuel level warning lamp



If it illuminates, refuel as soon as possible.

## Low tire pressure warning lamp



See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 213).

## High beam indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the headlamp high beam on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

## Message indicator



It will illuminate when a new message is stored in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 87).

## Oil pressure warning lamp

### CAUTION



Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.



# Instrument Cluster



If it stays on after starting or illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 195).

## Overspeed indicator



Illuminates continuously when your vehicle exceeds 120 km/h (75 mph). Reduce your speed and comply with all applicable laws and regulations.

## Rear fog lamp indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

## Safety belt reminder



See **Belt Minder** (page 32).

## Stability control (ESP) indicator



While driving, it flashes during activation of the system. After switching on the ignition, if it does not illuminate or illuminates continuously while driving, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction, the system switches off. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.



If you switch traction control off, the warning lamp will illuminate. The lamp will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

## Start-stop indicator



It will illuminate to inform you when the engine shuts down or in conjunction with a message. See **Using start-stop** (page 129). See **Information Messages** (page 87).

## AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

### Switching the chimes on and off

You can deactivate certain chimes using the Information display control. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9).

To set which chimes should sound:

1. Press the left arrow button on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Highlight **Settings** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
3. Highlight **Chimes** and press the right arrow button.
4. Highlight **Information** or **Warning** and press the **OK** button to switch the chime on and off.
5. Press the left arrow button to exit the menu. Press and hold the left arrow button to return to the main menu display.

## Automatic transmission

If position **P** is not selected, a warning chime will sound when the driver's door is opened.

## Frost

### WARNING



Even if the temperature rises to above +4°C (39°F) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



# Instrument Cluster

A warning chime will sound in the following conditions:

- +4°C (39°F) or lower: frost warning
- 0°C (32°F) or lower: danger of icy roads.

## Key outside car

### Vehicles with keyless entry

If the engine is running and a passive key is no longer detected within the vehicle interior, a chime will sound.

## Key-in-ignition

A warning tone will sound when any door is opened if the vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

## Lights on

A warning chime will sound if the driver's door is opened with the exterior lights switched on and the ignition switched off.

## Low fuel

A warning chime will sound when the remaining fuel is less than 8 liters (1.8 gallons).

## Luggage compartment lid - power liftgate

During operation and programming, the system may sound various chimes:

- One short chime indicates that the liftgate will start to open or close.
- Two short chimes during opening or closing will indicate that an obstacle has been detected.
- Three short chimes indicate that the liftgate will not operate.
- One long chime confirms successful programming of an end stop position.

See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 35).

## Safety belt reminder

### WARNINGS



The safety belt reminder remains in stand-by mode when the front safety belts have been fastened. It will be reactivated if either safety belt is unfastened.



Do not sit on top of a fastened safety belt to prevent the safety belt reminder from coming on. The occupant protection system will only provide optimum protection when you use the safety belt properly.

When the vehicle's speed exceeds the pre-determined limit, a warning chime will sound if either of the front safety belts are unfastened. The chime will stop after four minutes.

## Grand C-MAX rear safety belt reminder

### WARNING



If multiple belts are unfastened within a few seconds of each other, only one audible chime will sound.

When the vehicle's speed exceeds the pre-determined limit, a warning chime will sound if a rear safety belt is unfastened.

See **Belt Minder** (page 32).



# Information Displays

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**Note:** The information display will remain on for several minutes after you switch off the ignition.

Various systems on your vehicle can be controlled using the information display controls on the steering column. Corresponding information is displayed in the information display.

For detailed instructions on navigation, refer to the appropriate manual.

### Device list

The icon changes to show the current function in use.



CD



Radio



Auxiliary input



Phone



Settings

### Controls

Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.

Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.

Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.

Hold the left arrow button pressed at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).

Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm a setting.

### Menu structure - information display

#### All vehicles

You can access the menu using the Information display control. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9).

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

Trip Computer		
Trip odometer		
Dist to empty		
Instant fuel		
Average fuel	Ford EcoMode	Gear shifting
		Anticipation
		Speed
		Ford EcoMode
Average speed		



# Information Displays

<b>Trip Computer</b>
Outside air
All values*

\*Contact an authorized dealer to configure the trip computer display.

<b>Information</b>
Seatbelts
Auto StartStop
Driver alert
Traffic signs

<b>Settings</b>		
Driver assist	Traction ctrl	
	BLIS	
	City Stop	
	Driver alert	
	Hill start assist	
	Tyre monitor	
	Traffic signs	Recognition
		Speed warning
	Lane keeping	Sensitivity
		Intensity
Lighting	Rain light	
	Ambient light	
	Dimming	Auto
		Manual
		Set



# Information Displays

Settings		
	Auto highbeam	On
		Sensitivity
	Headlamp delay	Manual
		20 seconds
		40 seconds
		60 seconds
Display	Navigation info	Always on
		Always off
	Language	English
		Deutsch
		Italiano
		Français
		Español
		Čeština
		Dansk
		Norsk
		Русский
		Nederlands
		Polski
		Svenska
		Português
	Measure unit	
	Temp unit	
Chimes	Park slot found	
	Information	
	Warning	
Convenience	Aux heater	



# Information Displays

Settings		
	Park heater	Time 1
		Time 2
		Once
		Heat now
	Alarm	Full guard
		Reduced
		Ask on exit
System check		

## System Check

All active warnings will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Press the up or down arrow button to scroll through the list.

## Menu structure - information and entertainment display

You can access the menu using the buttons on the audio or navigation unit.

## All vehicles

You can access the menu using the Information and entertainment display control. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9).

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

CD
Tracks and folders

Radio
FM
FM-AST
DAB1



# Information Displays

Radio	
DAB2	
AM	
AM-AST	

Aux	
iPOD	
USB	
Bluetooth audio	
Line in	

SYNC-Phone	
Dial number	
Redial	
Phonebook	
Call history	
Speed Dial	
Text messaging	
BT Devices	
Phone settings	

Menu	
SYNC<Settings	Bluetooth on
	Set defaults
	Master reset
	Install on SYNC
	System info
	Voice settings



# Information Displays

Menu	
SYNC-Apps	
Audio settings	Adaptive volume
	Sound
	DSP Occupancy
	DSP equaliser
	News
	Alternat. frequency
	Regional mode
	DAB servicelink
	Bluetooth
Clock settings	Set time
	Set date
	GPS time
	Set time zone
	Summer time
	24h mode

## TRIP COMPUTER

### Distance to empty

Indicates the approximate distance the vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

### Instantaneous fuel consumption

Indicates the current average fuel consumption.

### Average fuel consumption

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

### Trip Odometer

Registers the mileage of individual journeys.

### Digital Speedometer

The speed your vehicle is traveling at will display as a digital number.

### Average speed

Indicates the average speed calculated since the function was last reset.



# Information Displays

## Outside air temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

## Odometer

Registers the total mileage of the vehicle.

## Resetting the trip computer

To reset a particular display:

1. Highlight **Trip Computer** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
2. Highlight the function to be reset.
3. Hold the **OK** button pressed.

## PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

### Language setting

A choice of 13 languages are available:

English, German, Italian, French, Spanish, Russian, Dutch, Polish, Swedish, Portuguese, Czech, Danish and Norwegian.

### Measure units

To toggle between metric and imperial units, scroll to this display and press the **OK** button.

Toggling the units of measure using this display will affect the following displays:

- Distance to empty.
- Average fuel consumption.
- Instantaneous fuel consumption.
- Average speed.

### Temperature units

To toggle between metric and imperial units, scroll to this display and press the **OK** button.

Toggling the temperature units using this display will affect the following displays:

- Outside air temperature.
- The temperature display in the automatic climate control.

## Chime deactivation

The following chimes can be deactivated:

- Warning messages.
- Information messages.

## INFORMATION MESSAGES

**Note:** *Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.*



E130248

Press the **OK** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. Other messages will be removed automatically after a short time.

Certain messages need to be confirmed before you can access the menus.



# Information Displays

## Message indicator



The message indicator illuminates to supplement some

messages. It will be red or amber depending on the severity of the message and will remain on until the cause of the message has been rectified.

## Airbag

Message	Message indicator	Action
Airbag malfunction service now	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

## Alarm

Message	Message indicator	Action
Alarm triggered check vehicle	amber	See <b>Alarm</b> (page 44).
Alarm malfunction service required	-	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

## Battery and charging system

Message	Message indicator	Action
Electrical system overvoltage stop safely	red	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Battery low check handbook	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.



# Information Displays

## Blind spot monitor

Message	Message indicator	Action
BLIS sensor blocked check handbook	amber	See <b>Blind Spot Monitor</b> (page 72).
BLIS: right sensor fault service required	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
BLIS: left sensor fault service required	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
BLIS not available trailer attached	amber	See <b>Blind Spot Monitor</b> (page 72).

## Child power lock

Message	Message indicator	Action
Child lock malfunction service required	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

## Doors open

Message	Message indicator	Action
Driver door open	red	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.
Driver side rear door open	red	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.
Passenger door open	red	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.
Passenger side rear door open	red	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.



## Information Displays

Message	Message indicator	Action
Luggage compartment lid open	red	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.
Bonnet open	red	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close. See <b>Opening and Closing the Hood</b> (page 188).
Power tailgate malfunction service required	-	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

### Engine immobilizer

Message	Message indicator	Action
Immobiliser active check handbook	amber	Your key has not been recognized. Remove the key and try again.
Immobiliser malfunction service required	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

### Hill start assist

Message	Message indicator	Action
Hill start assist not available	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

### Keyless entry

Message	Message indicator	Action
Ford KeyFree key not inside car	red	See <b>Keyless Entry</b> (page 39).
Ford KeyFree key inside vehicle	amber	See <b>Keyless Entry</b> (page 39).
Ford KeyFree Place key in key holder	-	See <b>Keyless Entry</b> (page 39).



## Information Displays

Message	Message indicator	Action
Ford KeyFree no key detected	-	See <b>Keyless Entry</b> (page 39).
Key battery low replace soon	-	
Steering lock engaged turn steering wheel	-	See <b>Steering Wheel Lock</b> (page 123).

## Lighting

Message	Message indicator	Action
Headlamp malfunction service required	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Brake lamp bulb fault	-	One or both of the brake lamp bulbs have blown. Check the brake lamp bulbs. See <b>Changing a Bulb</b> (page 60).
Rear fog lamp bulb fault	-	Both rear fog lamp bulbs have blown. Check the rear fog lamp bulbs. See <b>Changing a Bulb</b> (page 60).
Dipped beam bulb fault	-	One or both of the headlamp low beam bulbs have blown. Check the headlamp low beam bulbs. See <b>Changing a Bulb</b> (page 60).
Trailer brake lamp bulb fault	-	One or both of the brake lamp bulbs on your trailer have blown. Check the brake lamp bulbs on your trailer.
Trailer turn lamp bulb fault	-	One or both of the direction indicator bulbs on your trailer have blown. Check the direction indicator bulbs on your trailer.



# Information Displays

## Maintenance

Message	Message indicator	Action
High engine temperature stop safely	red	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Brake fluid level low service now	red	Check the brake fluid level. See <b>Brake and Clutch Fluid Check</b> (page 196).
Brake system malfunction stop safely	red	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.
Engine malfunction service now	red	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and switch off the engine immediately. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.
Engine oil level low check level	amber	See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 195).
Water detected in fuel service required	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Engine malfunction service now	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Engine oil change due	-	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.
Washer fluid level low	-	Check the washer fluid level. See <b>Washer Fluid Check</b> (page 196).



# Information Displays

## Power steering

Message	Message indicator	Action
Steering lock malfunction stop safely	red	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Steering loss stop safely	red	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Steering assist malfunction service required	amber	Power steering. Full steering will be maintained but you will need to exert greater force on the steering wheel. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Steering malfunction service now	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

## Stability control (ESP)

Message	Indicator	Action
Traction control off	amber	See <b>General Information</b> (page 81).

## Starting the engine

Message	Message indicator	Action
Ford KeyFree switch ignition off press POWER	red	See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 125).
Drive to clean exhaust filter check handbook	amber	See <b>Diesel Particulate Filter</b> (page 127).
Engine malfunction service now	amber	See <b>Diesel Particulate Filter</b> (page 127).



## Information Displays

Message	Message indicator	Action
Press brake to start	-	See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 125).
Press clutch to start	-	See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 125).
Press brake and clutch to start	-	See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 125).
Engine preheating	-	See <b>Diesel Particulate Filter</b> (page 127).
Cleaning exhaust filter	-	See <b>Diesel Particulate Filter</b> (page 127).
Filter cleaning complete	-	See <b>Diesel Particulate Filter</b> (page 127).
Engine start pending	-	Your engine may start after a delay due to glow plug pre-heating on vehicles with a diesel engine. See <b>Starting a Diesel Engine</b> (page 125).

### Start-stop

Message	Message indicator	Action
Auto StartStop Switch ignition off	red	Switch the ignition off before leaving the vehicle if the system has shut down the engine. See <b>Using start-stop</b> (page 129).
Auto StartStop Press clutch to start engine	-	The engine needs to be restarted, press the clutch pedal to start. See <b>Using start-stop</b> (page 129).
Auto StartStop Select neutral	-	Select neutral for the system to restart the engine. See <b>Using start-stop</b> (page 129).
Auto StartStop Manual Start required	-	The system is not functioning. A manual restart is required.



# Information Displays

## Transmission

Message	Message indicator	Action
Transmission too hot press brake	red	Under certain driving conditions it is possible that the clutches in the transmission can overheat. In these circumstances it is necessary to press the brake pedal and stop the vehicle to prevent further overheating. Select <b>N (NEUTRAL)</b> or <b>P (PARK)</b> and apply the foot brake and parking brake until the transmission has cooled and the message disappears from the display. If the vehicle is driven with this message active you may experience vehicle judder as a further overheat warning.
Transmission overheating stop safely	red	The transmission is too hot. In these extreme conditions the transmission will disengage drive in order to prevent damage due to overheating. You will not be able to drive until the transmission has cooled. Select <b>N (NEUTRAL)</b> or <b>P (PARK)</b> and apply the foot brake and parking brake until the transmission has cooled and the message disappears from the display.
Transmission malfunction service now	red	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Transmission too hot press brake	amber	Under certain driving conditions it is possible that the clutches in the transmission can overheat. In these circumstances it is necessary to press the brake pedal and stop the vehicle to prevent further



## Information Displays

Message	Message indicator	Action
		overheating. Select <b>N (NEUTRAL)</b> or <b>P (PARK)</b> and apply the foot brake and parking brake until the transmission has cooled and the message disappears from the display.
Transmission limited function check handbook	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Transmission warming up please wait	-	At low outside temperatures, after starting the engine, it may take the transmission several seconds to engage <b>R (REVERSE)</b> or <b>D (DRIVE)</b> . Keep the brake pedal depressed until these messages disappear from the display.
Transmission not in Park select P	-	See <b>Automatic Transmission</b> (page 137). See <b>Starting and Stopping the Engine</b> (page 123).

### Tire pressure monitoring system

Message	Message indicator	Action
Check tyre pressures	amber	The pressure in one or more tires has dropped. Check as soon as possible.
Tyre monitor malfunction service required	amber	Permanent malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by a properly trained technician.
Tyre sensors not detected check handbook	-	Displays when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 213). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, see an authorized dealer as soon as possible.



# Climate Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Outside air

Keep the air intakes forward of the windshield free from obstruction (snow, leaves etc.) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

### Recirculated air

#### CAUTION

⚠ Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to mist up. If the windows mist up, follow the settings for defrosting and demisting the windshield.

The air currently in the passenger compartment will be recirculated. Outside air will not enter the vehicle.

### Heating

Heating performance depends on the temperature of the engine coolant.

### Air conditioning

**Note:** The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 4°C (39°F).

**Note:** If you use the air conditioning, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher.

Air is directed through the evaporator where it is cooled. Humidity is extracted from the air to help keep the windows free of mist. The resulting condensation is directed to the outside of the vehicle and it is therefore normal if you see a small pool of water under your vehicle.

### General information on controlling the interior climate

Fully close all the windows.

### Warming the interior

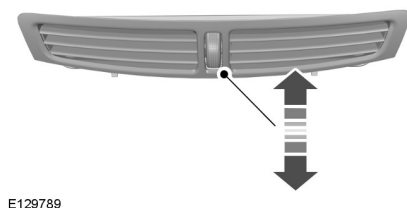
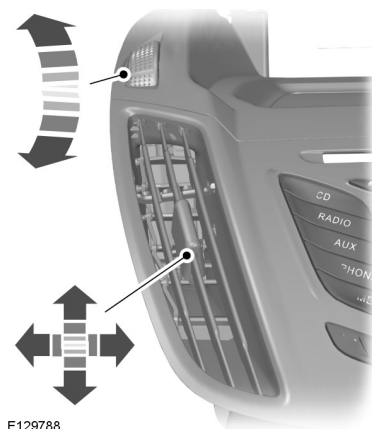
Direct the air towards your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air towards the windshield and the door windows.

### Cooling the interior

Direct the air towards your face.

## AIR VENTS

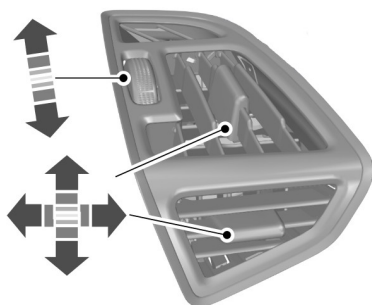
### Center air vents





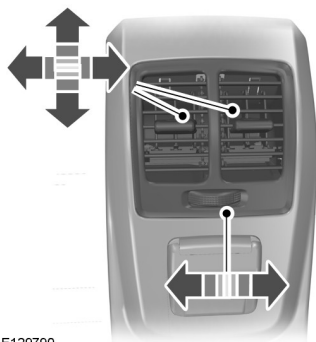
# Climate Control

## Side air vent



E129787

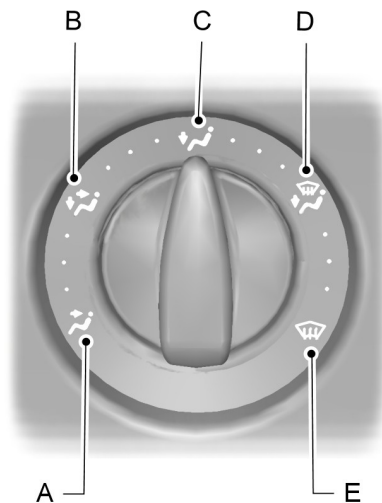
## Second row air vents



E129790

## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL

### Air distribution control



E74660

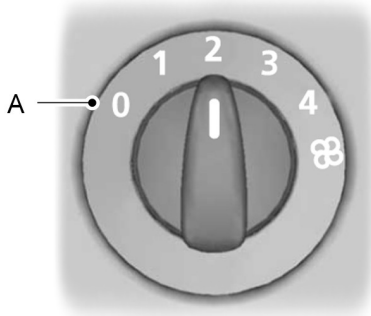
- A Face level
- B Face level and footwell
- C Footwell
- D Footwell and windshield
- E Windshield

You can set the air distribution control to any position between the symbols.



# Climate Control

## Blower



E75470

A Off

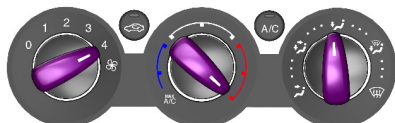
**Note:** If you switch the blower off, the windshield may mist up.

## Recirculated air



Press the button to toggle between outside air and recirculated air.

## Heating the interior quickly



E129884

## Ventilation



E129885

Set the air distribution control, blower and air vents to suit your requirements.

## Air conditioning

### Switching the air conditioning on and off



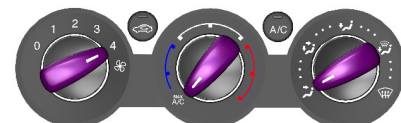
If you turn the blower off, the air conditioning will turn off. When you turn the blower on again, the air conditioning will come on automatically.

## Cooling with outside air



E129886

## Cooling the interior quickly



E129887

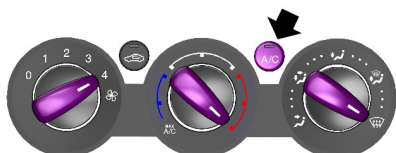


# Climate Control

With the heater control in this position, the air conditioning and recirculated air will switch on automatically.

You can switch the air conditioning and recirculated air on and off.

## Defrosting and demisting the windshield



E129888

When the temperature is above 4°C (39°F), the air conditioning will switch on automatically. Make sure that the blower is on. The indicator in the switch will illuminate during defrosting and demisting.

If you move the air distribution control to a position other than windshield, the **A/C** will remain on.

You can switch the air conditioning and recirculated air on and off while the air distribution control is set to windshield.

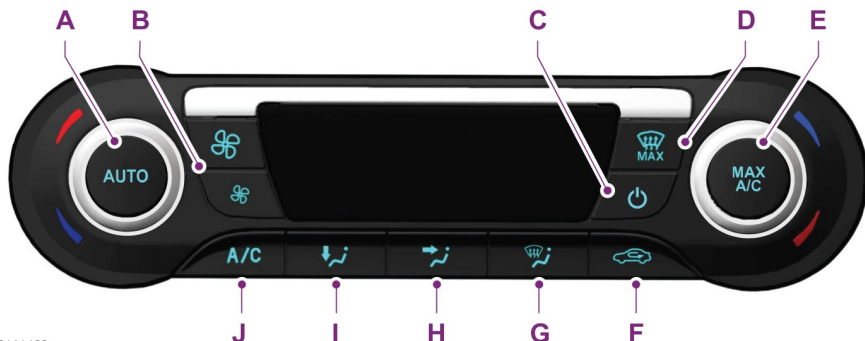
If necessary, switch the heated windows on. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 102).

## Reducing interior air humidity



E129889

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



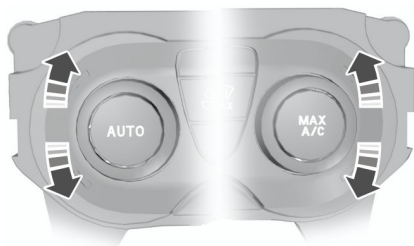
E141422



# Climate Control

- A **AUTO:** Press the button to select automatic operation. The system automatically controls the temperature, amount and distribution of the airflow to reach and maintain your previously selected temperature.
- B **Fan speed:** Controls the volume of air circulated in your vehicle. Press the buttons to select the desired fan speed. The setting is shown in the display.
- C **On and off button:** Press the button to switch the system on and off.
- D **MAX Defrost:** Press the button to distribute outside air through the windshield air vents. Air conditioning is automatically selected. The fan is set to the highest speed and the temperature to HI. When the air distribution is set in this position you are unable to select recirculated air or manually adjust the temperature control. Press the **AUTO** button to return to auto mode.
- E **MAX A/C:** Press the button to distribute maximum air conditioning through the instrument panel air vents. This mode is more economical and efficient than normal air conditioning.
- F **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
- G **Defrost:** Press the button to distribute air through the windshield air vents. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.
- H **Instrument panel:** Press the button to distribute air through the instrument panel air vents.
- I **Footwell:** Press the button to distribute air through the footwell air vents.
- J **Air conditioning:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve air conditioning when starting your vehicle, drive with the windows slightly open for two to three minutes.

## Temperature Control



E133115

You can set the temperature between 60°F (15.5°C) and 85°F (29.5°C). In position LO, the system switches to permanent cooling. In position HI, the system switches to permanent heating.

**Note:** If you select either position LO or HI, the system does not regulate a stable temperature.



# Climate Control

## Mono Mode

In this mode, the temperature settings for both the driver side and passenger side are linked. If you adjust the setting using the rotary control on the driver side, the system adjusts the temperature to the same setting on the passenger side.

## Switching Mono Mode Off

Select a temperature for the passenger side using the rotary control on the passenger side. Mono mode automatically switches off. The temperature on the driver side remains unchanged. You can now adjust the driver side and passenger side temperatures independently. The temperature settings for each side are shown in the display.

## Switching Mono Mode Back On

Press and hold the **AUTO** button. The passenger side temperature is adjusted to the driver side temperature setting.

## HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

### Heated windows

Use the heated windows to defrost or demist the windshield or rear window.

**Note:** The heated windows operate only when the engine is running.

### Heated windshield



### Heated rear window



## Vehicles without auxiliary heater

If the ambient temperature is below 5°C (41°F) and the engine coolant is below 65°C (149°F), the heated windshield and heated rear window will switch on automatically. They will switch off automatically.

## Heated exterior mirrors

Electric exterior mirrors are fitted with a heating element that will defrost or demist the mirror glass. They will switch on automatically when you switch the heated rear window on.

## AUXILIARY HEATER

### Parking heater

#### WARNINGS



The parking heater must not be operated at filling stations, near sources of combustible vapors or dust or in enclosed spaces.



The parking heater should be switched on for approximately 10 minutes at least once a month all year round. This prevents the water pump and heater motor from seizing.

**Note:** The parking heater will only operate if there is at least 7.5 liters (1.6 gallons) of fuel in the fuel tank and the ambient temperature is below 15°C (59°F). The heater will not operate if the battery is low.

**Note:** The heating depends on the outside air temperature.

**Note:** When the parking heater is activated, exhaust fumes may come from under the sides of the vehicle. This is normal.

**Note:** On vehicles with manual climate control the heating of the vehicle interior is dependent on the temperature, air distribution and blower control settings.



# Climate Control

The parking heater operates independently of the vehicle heater by heating the engine's coolant circuit. It is fed from the vehicle fuel tank. You can also use it while the vehicle is in motion to help the vehicle heater warm up the interior more quickly.

Used properly, the parking heater provides the following benefits:

- It preheats the interior of the vehicle.
- It keeps the windows clear of ice in the event of frost and prevents condensation.
- It avoids cold starts and allows the engine to reach operating temperature sooner.

To prevent the battery from discharging:

- Once the parking heater has performed one heating cycle, the next programmed heating cycle will only be carried out if you have started the vehicle's engine in between.
- After a heating cycle, drive the vehicle for at least the period of the heating cycle.

## Program the parking heater

**Note:** The programmed time is the time at which you wish the vehicle to be warm and ready to drive, not the time at which the heater switches on.

**Note:** You must program the times at least 70 minutes in advance of the time you wish to set.

**Note:** You must set the time and date correctly. See **Clock** (page 118).

To program the heating times:

1. Use the arrow buttons on the steering wheel to enter the main menu. See **Information Displays** (page 81).
2. Select the park heater option.

Park Heater	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Time 1	>
<input type="checkbox"/> Time 2	>
<input type="checkbox"/> Once	>
<input type="checkbox"/> Heat now	>

E136301

- The two time functions allow you to program up to two heating cycles for each day of the week. These times will remain stored and the heater will warm up the vehicle at these times on these days every week.
- The function **once** allows you to program one heating cycle for one specific day.
- The function **Heat now** automatically switches on the heater.

## Program the functions Time 1 and Time 2

Time 1	
[07:55]	>
<input type="checkbox"/> Monday	
<input type="checkbox"/> Tuesday	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Wednesday	
<input type="checkbox"/> Thursday	
<input type="checkbox"/> Friday	
v	

E74468



# Climate Control

1. Use the arrow buttons on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Select the first program time list.
3. Highlight the day on which the heater should warm up the vehicle.
4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Continue in the same way to select all the days on which the heater should warm up the vehicle.
6. To set the time at which the vehicle should be warmed up, highlight the time at the top of the display and press the **OK** button. The hours start to flash.
7. Adjust the hours and minutes as necessary.

You can use the second program time list to set a second cycle, for example different times on different days or twice on the same day. The program procedure is the same as for the first program timer.

## Deactivating the program heater

1. Use the arrow buttons on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Uncheck the active program session.

## Program the heater for a single cycle

1. Select **Once** and press the right arrow button.
2. Press the **OK** button and set the required time and date.
3. Press **OK** to confirm the set time and date.

## Activating the heater manually

Highlight **Heat now** and press the **OK** button. A cross appears in the box when the heater is activated.

To deactivate the heater, uncheck the **Heat now** function.

## Fuel operated heater (depending on country)

### WARNING



The fuel operated heater must not be operated at filling stations, near sources of combustible vapors or dust or in enclosed spaces.

The fuel operated heater aids in warming the engine and the vehicle interior on vehicles with a diesel engine. It is switched on or off automatically depending on the outside air temperature and the coolant temperature, unless you have deactivated it.

To deactivate the fuel operated heater:

1. Highlight **Aux. Heater** and press the **OK** button. A cross appears in the box when the heater is activated.

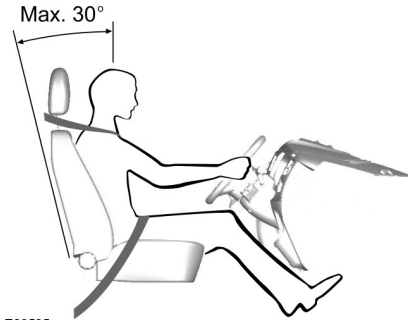
## Diesel auxiliary heater (depending on country)

The diesel auxiliary heater (PTC electrical heater) aids in warming the engine and the vehicle interior on vehicles with a diesel engine. It is switched on or off automatically depending on the outside air temperature, the coolant temperature and the alternator load.



# Seats

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



E68595

### WARNINGS



Do not adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving.



Only when you use the safety belt properly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect.

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a collision. We recommend that you:

- sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forwards as possible, remaining comfortable.
- keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 250 millimeters (10 inches) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

- bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## MANUAL SEATS

### Moving the seats backwards and forwards



E130249

### WARNING

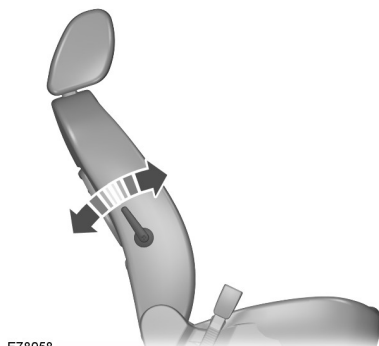


Rock the seat backwards and forwards after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged in its catch.



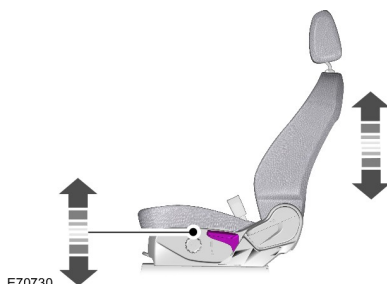
# Seats

## Adjusting the lumbar support



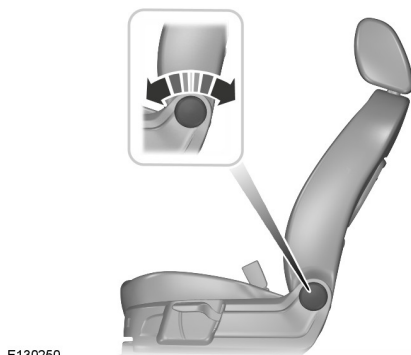
E78058

## Adjusting the height of the driver's seat



E70730




## Adjusting the angle of the seatback



E130250

## HEAD RESTRAINTS

### WARNINGS

-  Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.
-  Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.
-  When using a forward facing child restraint on a rear seat, always remove the head restraint from that seat.

## Adjusting the Head Restraints

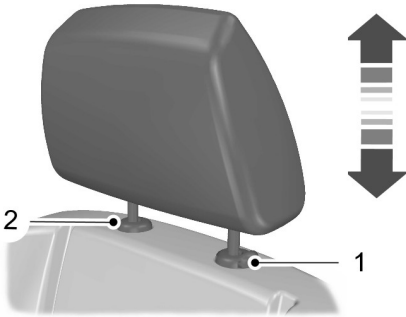
Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.



# Seats

## Removing the Head Restraints

### Front Head Restraint



E140447

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Release the retaining clip.

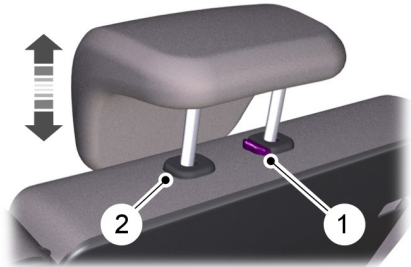
**Note:** Use a suitable implement.

### Rear Head Restraint

#### C-MAX

**Note:** See an authorized dealer to remove the rear head restraints.

#### Grand C-MAX

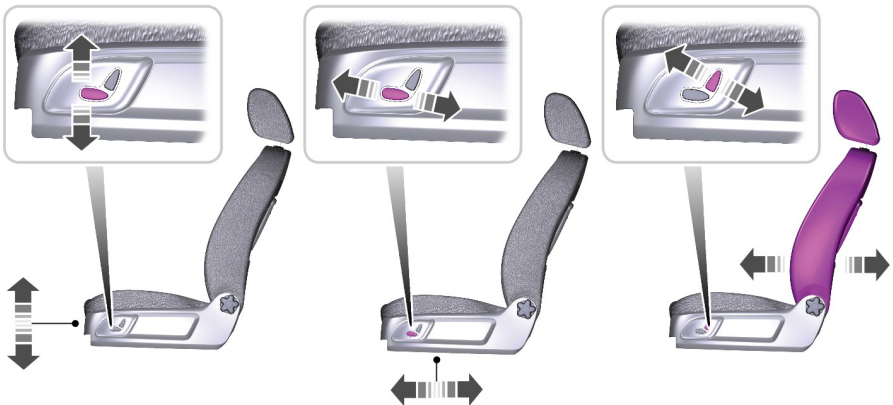


E140448

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Release the retaining clip.

**Note:** Use a suitable implement.

## POWER SEATS







E78060



# Seats

## REAR SEATS

### WARNINGS


-  When folding or unfolding the seats, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame.
-  Rock the seat backwards and forwards after moving to make sure that it is fully engaged in its catch.
-  Make sure the rear of the seat is free from obstruction when moving it rearwards.
-  When folding the seatbacks up, make sure that the belts are visible to an occupant and not caught behind the seat.

**Note:** Fully lower the head restraint when folding the seats. See **Head Restraints** (page 106).

## Second row seats - C-MAX

### Comfort seat system

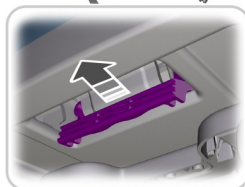
#### WARNING

-  Do not slide the outboard seats rearwards into the comfort position if the centre seat is folded forwards. There is a risk of injury in the event of an accident or if the center seat falls back down.

**Note:** Do not fold the seatback forward when the seat is fully to the rear in the comfort position. Slide the seat fully forwards.

The center seat can be folded up and the outboard seats moved rearwards and slightly inboard to provide more leg and shoulder room for the rear passengers.

1. Remove the luggage cover. See **Luggage Covers** (page 167).



E78062

2. Pull the release lever on the underside of the seat.



E78063

**Note:** The complete seat will move rearwards as the seat cushion is folded up.

3. Fold the seat back until it engages.



# Seats



E78064

**Note:** As the seats slide rearwards, they also move slightly inboard.

4. Pull the lever on the outer front edge of the outboard seats and push the seats rearwards.

To return the seats to the forward position, pull the lever and slide the seats forwards.

To return the center seat to its original position, pull the lever on the underside of the seat. Fold the center seat forwards and push it back down fully until it engages.

Install the luggage cover. See **Luggage Covers** (page 167).



## Folding the seatbacks down

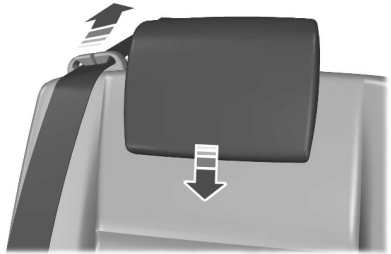
### WARNING



Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when the vehicle is moving.

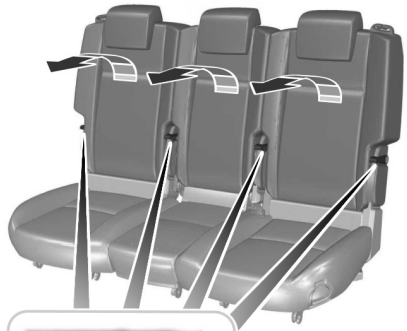
**Note:** All three seatbacks can be folded forward independently of one another.

**Note:** A table surface and cup holders are located on the rear of the center seatback.



E78066

Remove the safety belts from the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks. The safety belt tongues must be inserted into the retaining slots. See **Fastening the safety belts** (page 28).



E135599



# Seats

Pull the lever on the side of the seatback and fold the seatback forwards. Push it down until it engages.

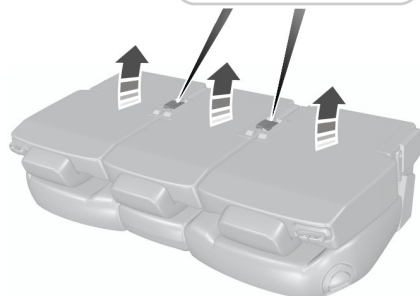
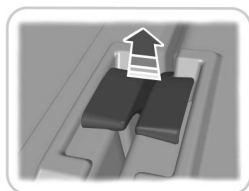
## Folding the seatbacks up

### WARNING



Make sure the seatback is fully engaged in its latch.

**Note:** When in use, the rear safety belts should be placed in the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks. See **Fastening the safety belts** (page 28).



E135808

Pull the lever on the seatback and lift the seatback up.

## Folding the seats forward

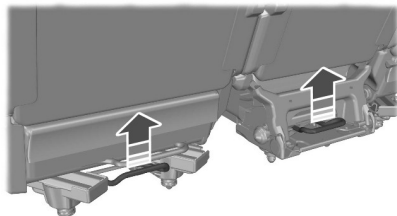
**Note:** To increase the space in the luggage compartment, the rear seats can be folded forward.

**Note:** All three seats can be folded forward independently of one another.

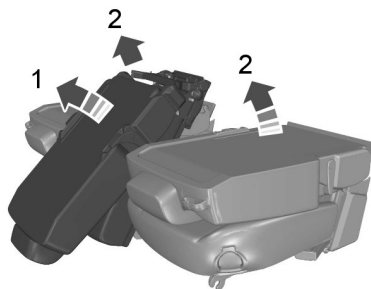
**Note:** If one or both outboard seats is to be folded forward together with the center seat, fold the center seat forward first.

**Note:** If only the outboard seats are to be folded forward, the center seatback must be left in the upright position.

Fold the seatback down. See **Folding the seatbacks down**.



E135956



E135957

Pull the lower bar on the rear of the seats to release them from the floor and fold the seats forward.

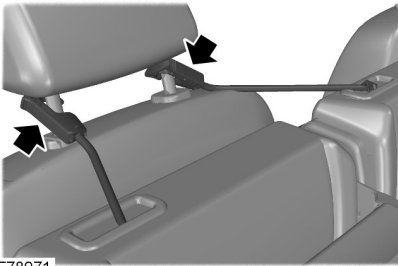
### WARNING



Always attach the retaining strap to the front head restraint when a rear seat is folded forwards.



## Seats



E78071

Pull out and attach the retaining straps to the front head restraints to hold the folded seats in the upright position.

### Returning the seats to the seating position

#### WARNINGS



To avoid injury, take care when folding the seats down.

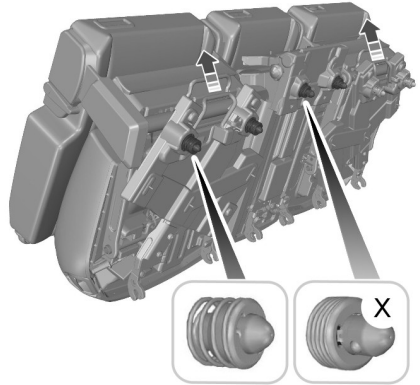


Make sure that the locking hole on the floor is clear of sand, rock or any objects which may prevent the seat from locking.



When the retaining strap is detached from the head restraint, it will recoil back into the seat.

**Note:** If one or both outboard seats are folded forward together with the center seat, the outboard seats must be folded back down first.



E78073

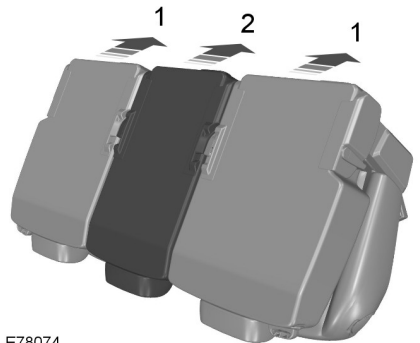
Before folding the seats back down, pull the lower bar on the rear of each seat and check that the latches are in the extended position.

Detach the retaining straps.

#### WARNING



Make sure the seat is securely locked by pushing forward and rearward on the top of the seatback or by trying to pull up the edge of the cushion.



E78074



# Seats

Fold the seats back down until they engage.

Raise the seatbacks. See **Folding the seatbacks up**.

Install the rear safety belts in the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks.

## Removing the seats

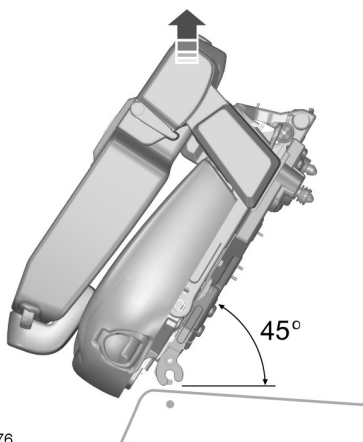
### WARNING



The rear seats are heavy. To avoid injury, take care when lifting the seats.

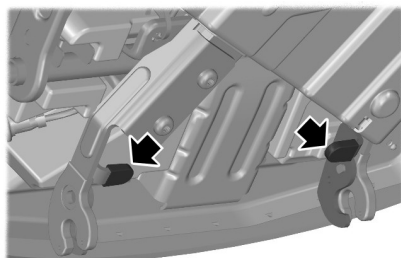
**Note:** To increase the space in the luggage compartment, the rear seats can be removed completely.

1. Fold the seat forward. See **Folding the seats forward**.



E78076

2. Fold the seat up to an angle of approximately 45 degrees to the floor.



E78075

3. Push down both red levers to open the locking mechanism.
4. Remove the seat.

## Installing the seats

### WARNINGS



To avoid injury, take care when folding the seats down.

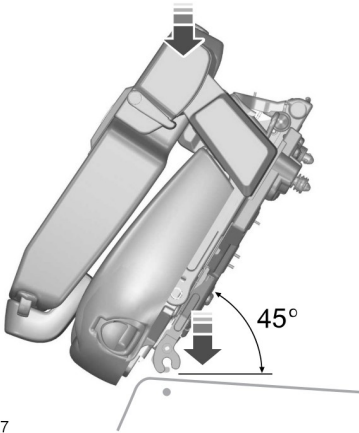


Make sure that the locking hole on the floor is clear of sand, rock or any objects which may prevent the seat from locking.

**Note:** Make sure the locking mechanism is fully open.

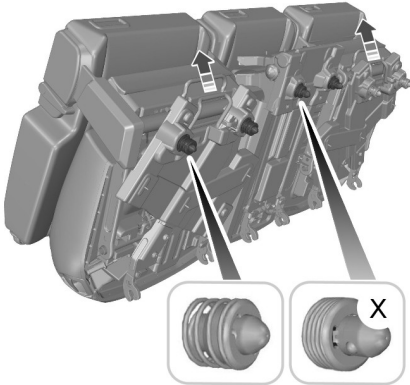


# Seats



E78077

Holding the seat at an angle of approximately 45 degrees to the floor, lower the seat onto the retaining bar.



E78073

Before folding the seats back down, pull the lower bar on the rear of each seat and check that the latches are in the extended position.

Push the seat back down until it engages.

## Second row seats - Grand C-MAX

### Folding the seatback forwards or backwards



E135422

Lift the lever and push the seatback. It will move in steps.

### Stowing the center seat

#### WARNING



Make sure the center seat back is in the upright position when the vehicle is moving.



E129302

1. Pull the lever on the back of the center seat and push the seatback down until it locks.



## Seats



E129298

2. Pull the strap and lift the right-hand seat cushion.



E135801

3. Pull the strap to fold the center seat over into the right-hand seat base.
4. Fold the right-hand seat cushion down.

**Note:** You can use the space between the outboard seats to access the third row seats when the center seat has been stowed.

### Moving the seats backwards and forwards

**Note:** If the center seat is not stowed it will move with the right-hand seat.



E129300

### Folding the seats forward

#### WARNING



Do not use the third row seats when the second row seats have been folded forward.

**Note:** The center seat must be stowed into the right-hand seat base before the right-hand seat is folded.



# Seats



E129298

1. Pull the strap and lift the cushion.
2. Lift the lever and push the seatback down until it locks.

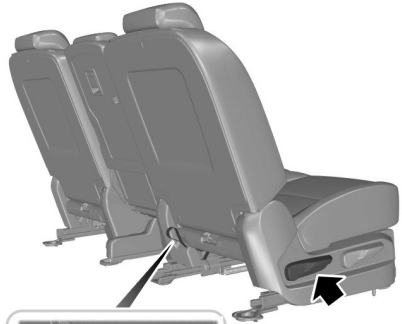
## Easy entry position

### WARNING



Do not use the seat when it is in the easy entry position.

**Note:** You can move the outboard seats forwards to allow access to the third row seats.



E129296

1. Either pull the lever on the side of the seat cushion or pull the strap at the rear of the seat. The seat will move forward.
2. Fold the seatback forward.

## Third row seats - Grand C-MAX

**Note:** Remove the luggage cover. See **Luggage Covers** (page 167).

**Note:** When not in use, the safety belts should be placed in the clips on the outboard trim. See **Fastening the safety belts** (page 28).

## Folding the seats flat

**Note:** When transporting a load with the seats folded flat, fold the relevant carpet forwards to cover the folded seat back.

**Note:** Do not place heavy objects in the area marked on the carpet.

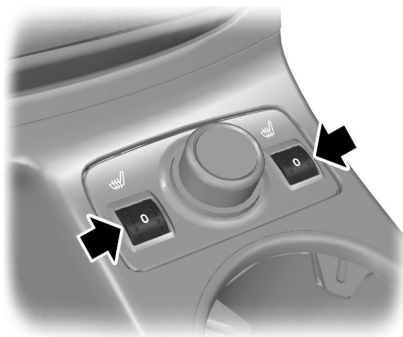


## Seats



E129301

Pull the strap at the top of the seatback and fold the seatback forward.



E130471

The maximum temperature is reached after five or six minutes. It is regulated thermostatically.

The seat heating will operate only when the ignition is on.

## HEATED SEATS

### CAUTION

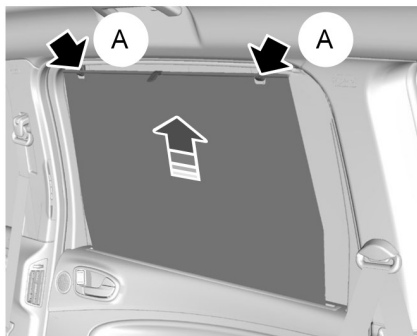
! Operating this function with the engine off will drain the battery.



# Convenience features

## SUN SHADES

### Side windows



E74809

Pull the blind up and attach it to the hooks (A).

### Roof

#### WARNING



Do not operate the sun blind unless it is free from obstruction.

**Note:** If you operate the switch often during a short period of time, the system might become inoperable for a certain time to prevent damage due to overheating.

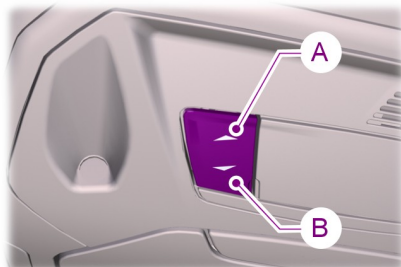
**Note:** The sun blind can only be operated when the ignition is on.



E125025

The sun blind is operated by a switch located between the sun visors.

### Opening and closing the sun blind



E125146

A Press to close

B Press to open

### Opening and closing the sun blind manually

Press and hold the switch to the first action point. Release it to stop the blind.



## Convenience features

### Opening and closing the sun blind automatically

Press the switch to the second action point and release it. Press it again to stop the blind.

**Note:** *If this does not operate correctly, follow the relearning procedure below.*

### Anti-trap function

#### WARNINGS



The anti-trap function is deactivated until the memory has been reset by the relearning procedure.



Careless closing of the blind can override the anti-trap function and cause injuries.

The sun blind will stop automatically while opening or closing and reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

### Sun blind relearning

#### WARNING



The anti-trap function is not active during this procedure. Make sure that there are no obstacles in the way of the moving blind.

**Note:** *The relearning process must be started no later than 30 seconds after turning the ignition on.*

In case the blind no longer opens or closes properly, follow this relearning procedure:

1. Press switch **B** to the first action point twice and release it within two seconds.
2. Press switch **A** to the first action point twice and release it within two seconds.

3. Press and hold switch **B** to the first action point, until the blind fully opens.
4. Press and hold switch **A** to the first action point, until the blind fully closes.

If step 2 is not completed within 15 seconds of step 1, the relearning function will be interrupted. Turn the ignition off, wait for another 30 seconds and then turn the ignition back on again. Start the procedure once more from the beginning.

Confirm that relearning has been completed by using automatic opening and closing.

## INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER



E70723

## CLOCK

See **Information Displays** (page 81).

## CIGAR LIGHTER

#### CAUTIONS



If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may discharge.

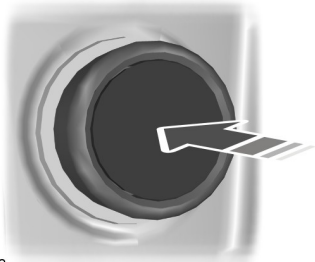


Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.



## Convenience features

**Note:** You can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances that have a maximum current rating of 15 Amperes. Use only Ford accessory connectors or connectors specified for use with SAE standard sockets.



E103382

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It will pop out automatically.

### AUXILIARY POWER POINTS

#### CAUTION

- ! If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may discharge.

**Note:** You can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances that have a maximum current rating of 10 Amperes. Use only Ford accessory connectors or connectors specified for use with SAE standard sockets.



E78056

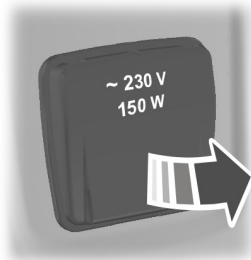
Auxiliary power sockets are located in the center console and in the luggage compartment.

### Power inverter

#### CAUTIONS

- ! If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may discharge.
- ! If the LED flashes continuously, re-insert the plug or switch the ignition off and then on again.
- ! It will switch off if the temperature is above 85°C (185°F). The LED will flash once. When it has cooled down it will switch back on automatically.
- ! Do not exceed the maximum power output. If you do, the LED will flash twice. Remove the plug and re-insert it.
- ! If the LED flashes three or four times, have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

**Note:** You can use the socket to power 230 volt appliances that have a maximum rating of 150 watts.



E98199

### CUP HOLDERS

#### WARNING

- ! Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when the vehicle is moving.



## Convenience features

### Seat back trays

#### WARNING

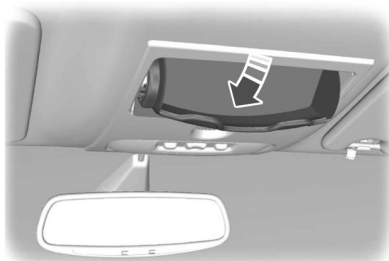


Do not use the trays when the vehicle is moving. Make sure that you secure the trays in the lowered position before setting off.

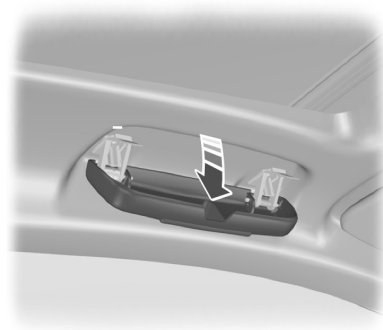


E72630

### GLASSES HOLDER



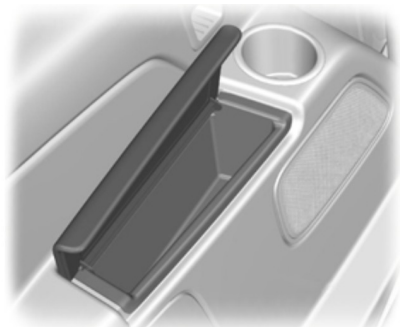
E75193



E91508

### STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

#### Rear storage compartment

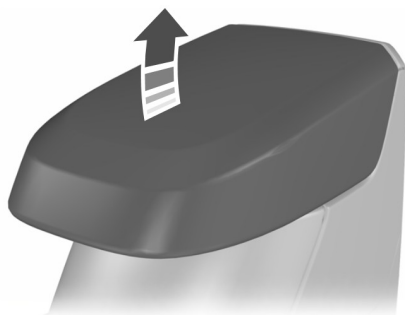


E72982

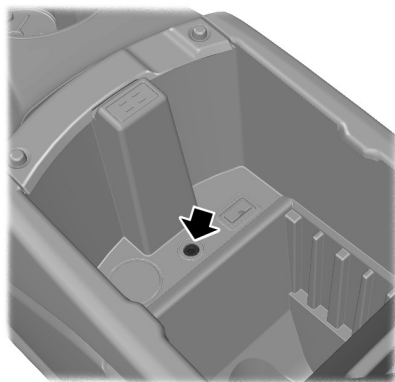


## Convenience features

### AUXILIARY INPUT JACK



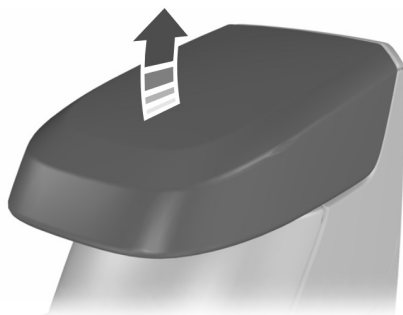
E91511



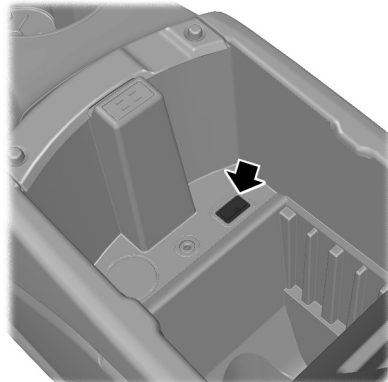
E130068

See **Auxiliary input jack** (page 244).

### USB PORT



E91511



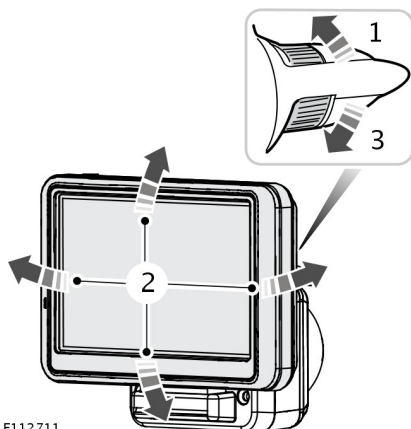
E130070



## Convenience features

### SATELLITE NAVIGATION UNIT HOLDER

#### Adjusting the holder



E112711

1. Unlock.
2. Adjust the holder to the desired position.
3. Lock.

**Note:** Make sure that the navigation unit holder is locked in position.

### FLOOR MATS

#### WARNING



When using the floor mats, always make sure the floor mat is properly secured using the appropriate fixings and positioned so that it does not interfere with the operation of the pedals.



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### General points on starting

If the battery has been disconnected the vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approx. 8 kilometers (5 miles) after reconnecting the battery.

This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. Any unusual driving characteristics during this period may be disregarded.

### Starting the engine by towing or pushing

#### WARNING



To prevent damage you must not push or tow start your vehicle. Use booster cables and a booster battery.

See **Jump-Starting the Vehicle** (page 202).

## IGNITION SWITCH

#### WARNING



Never return the key to position **0** or **I** when the vehicle is in motion.



E72128

**0** The ignition is off.

**I** The ignition and all main electrical circuits are disabled.

**Note:** Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long to avoid discharging the battery.

**II** The ignition is switched on. All electrical circuits are operational. Warning lamps and indicators illuminate. This is the key position when driving. You must also select it when being towed.

**III** The starter motor is activated. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

## STEERING WHEEL LOCK

#### WARNING



Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

To lock the steering wheel:

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch.
2. Rotate the steering wheel slightly to engage the lock.

To unlock the steering wheel:

1. Insert the key in the ignition switch.
2. Turn the key to position **I**.

**Note:** You may need to rotate the steering wheel slightly to assist unlocking if there is a steering wheel load applied.

## STEERING WHEEL LOCK - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock that operates automatically.

The system will lock the steering wheel after a short period of time once you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside your vehicle, or when you lock your vehicle.



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

**Note:** The system will not lock the steering wheel when the ignition is on or while your vehicle is moving.

## Unlocking the Steering Wheel

Switch the ignition on to unlock the steering wheel.

**Note:** You may have to rotate the steering wheel slightly to assist unlocking.

## STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

**Note:** You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time, for example 10 seconds. The number of start attempts is limited to approximately six. If you exceed this limit, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.

### Cold or hot engine

#### Vehicles with manual transmission

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start may stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

#### Vehicles with automatic transmission

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** Releasing the brake pedal during engine start may stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P or N.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine.

#### All vehicles

If the engine does not start, wait for a short period and try again.

If the engine does not start after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow the flooded engine procedure.

If you have difficulty starting the engine when the temperature is below  $-25^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-13^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), press the accelerator pedal to the mid-way point of its travel and try again.

### Flooded engine

#### Vehicles with manual transmission

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

#### Vehicles with automatic transmission

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P or N.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Fully depress the brake pedal.
4. Start the engine.

#### All vehicles

If the engine does not start, repeat the cold or hot engine procedure.

### Engine idle speed after starting

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting will vary depending on the engine temperature.

The idle speed is automatically increased when the engine is cold this is to heat the catalytic converter. This keeps the vehicle emissions to an absolute minimum.

The idle speed will slowly decrease to the normal level as the catalytic converter warms up.



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

### Cold or hot engine

#### All vehicles

**Note:** When the temperature is below  $-15^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $5^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), you may need to crank the engine for up to 25 seconds.

**Note:** Continue cranking the engine until it starts.

**Note:** You can only operate the starter for a maximum of 30 seconds at a time.



Switch the ignition on and wait until the glow plug indicator goes off.

#### Vehicles with manual transmission

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

#### Vehicles with automatic transmission

1. Select park or neutral.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine.

## KEYLESS STARTING

### WARNINGS



The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cell phones.



Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle.  
See **Steering Wheel Lock** (page 123).

**Note:** The ignition may automatically switch off after a period of time if your vehicle has been left unattended with the ignition on. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located inside the vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

**Note:** To start your engine you must also fully depress the brake or clutch pedal, depending on the transmission fitted.



E85766

### Ignition on

Press the button once. All electrical circuits are operational, warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

### Starting with manual transmission

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Briefly press the button.

### Starting with automatic transmission

**Note:** Releasing the brake pedal during engine start may stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Move the transmission selector lever to position P or N.



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

3. Briefly press the button.

## Starting a diesel engine

**Note:** Engine cranking may not commence until the engine glow plug cycle has been completed. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

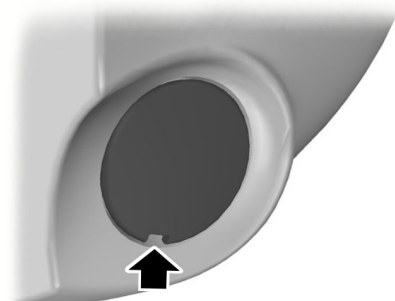
**Note:** Continue to press the clutch or brake pedal until engine cranking begins.

## Failure to start

The passive starting system will not function if:

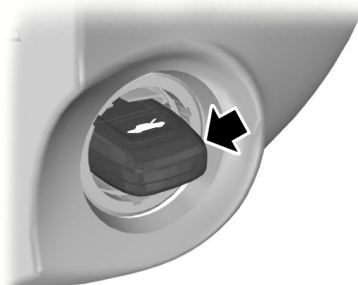
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery is flat.

If you are unable to start your vehicle carry out the following procedure.



E87381

1. Carefully prise out the cover.



E85767

2. Insert the key into the key holder.



E85766

3. With the key in this position you can press the button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

## Stopping the engine with the vehicle stationary

**Note:** The ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators will be switched off.

### Manual transmission

Briefly press the button.

### Automatic transmission

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P.
2. Briefly press the button.



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Stopping the engine when the vehicle is moving

### WARNING



Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not be locked, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off some electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators may also be OFF.

Press and hold the button or press twice within two seconds.

## DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The DPF forms part of the emissions reduction systems fitted to your vehicle. It filters harmful diesel particulates (soot) from the exhaust gas.

### Regeneration

### WARNING



Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The DPF regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after DPF regeneration, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

### CAUTION



Avoid running out of fuel.

**Note:** During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.

**Note:** After you have switched your engine off the fans may continue to run for a short period of time.

Unlike a normal filter which requires periodic replacement, the DPF has been designed to regenerate, or clean itself to maintain operating efficiency. The regeneration process takes place automatically. However, some driving conditions mean that you may need to support the regeneration process.

If you drive only short distances or your journeys contain frequent stopping and starting, where there is increased acceleration and deceleration, occasional trips with the following conditions will assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle at a constant speed, preferably on a main road or highway, for up to 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch off the ignition.
- Use a lower gear than normal to maintain a higher engine speed during this journey, where appropriate.

## SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

### Vehicles with a turbocharger

### CAUTION



Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

### CAUTION

⚠ Make sure you disconnect the power cable from the engine heater connector before driving away.

**Note:** *The engine heater connector is located in the front bumper.*



E135813


Connect the engine heater for two to three hours before starting the engine.



# Auto-Start-Stop

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### CAUTION


 For vehicles with Start-stop the battery requirement is different. It must be replaced by one of exactly the same specification as the original.


The system reduces fuel consumption and CO2 emissions by shutting down the engine when the vehicle is idling, for example at traffic lights. The engine will automatically restart when the driver presses the clutch pedal or when required by a vehicle system, for example to recharge the battery.


To obtain maximum benefit from the system, move the gear lever to the neutral position and release the clutch pedal during any stop of longer than three seconds.

## USING START-STOP

### WARNINGS

 The engine may restart automatically if required by the system. See **Principle of Operation** (page 129).

 Switch the ignition off before opening the hood or carrying out any maintenance.

 Always switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle, as the system may have shut down the engine but the ignition will still be live.

**Note:** The system only operates when the engine is warm and the outside temperature is between 0°C (32°F) and 30°C (86°F).

**Note:** If you stall the engine, and then depress the clutch pedal within a couple of seconds, the system will automatically restart the engine.

**Note:** The Start-stop indicator will illuminate green when the engine shuts down. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 77).

**Note:** The Start-stop indicator will flash amber, requiring you to select neutral or depress the clutch pedal. In conjunction a message will be shown in the display.

**Note:** If the system detects a malfunction, it is deactivated. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

**Note:** If you have switched the system off, the switch will be illuminated.

**Note:** The system is on by default. To switch the system off, press the switch in the instrument panel. The system will only be de-activated for the current ignition cycle. To turn it on, press the switch again. For item location. See **At a Glance** (page 9).



## To stop the engine

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Move the gear lever to the neutral position.
3. Release the clutch pedal.
4. Release the accelerator pedal.

The system may not shut down the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- To maintain the interior climate.
- Low battery voltage.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The driver's door has been opened.



## Auto-Start-Stop

---

- Low engine operating temperature.
- Low brake system vacuum.
- If a road speed of 5 km/h (3 mph) has not been exceeded.
- The driver's safety belt has not been fastened.

### To re-start the engine

**Note:** *The gear lever must be in the neutral position.*

Depress the clutch pedal.

The system may automatically restart the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- Low battery voltage.
- To maintain the interior climate.



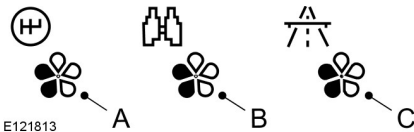
# Eco Mode

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The system assists the driver to drive more efficiently by constantly monitoring characteristics of gear changing, anticipation of traffic conditions and speeds on motorways and open roads.

**Note:** *These efficiency values do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. It might vary as it is not only related to these driving disciplines but also influenced by many other factors such as short journeys and cold starts.*

The value of these characteristics is represented by petals shown in the display, with five petals being the most efficient. The more efficiently you drive, the better the rating, and the better your overall fuel consumption.



E121813

A: Gear shifting

B: Anticipation

C: Efficient speed

## Gear shifting

Using the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions will improve fuel consumption.

## Anticipation

Adjusting your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles without the need for heavy braking or acceleration will improve fuel consumption.

## Efficient speed

Higher speeds use more fuel. Reducing your cruising speed on open roads will improve fuel consumption.

## USING ECO MODE

The system is accessed using the trip computer menu. See **Trip Computer** (page 86).

Press the **SET/RESET** button to enter Eco mode. Use the rotary control to view individual screens and additional tips on how to improve your fuel consumption.

## Resetting Eco mode

Reset the average fuel consumption.

**Note:** *New values may take a short time to calculate.*



# Fuel and Refueling

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

### WARNINGS



Stop refueling after the fuel nozzle stops the second time. Additional fuel will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank which could lead to fuel overflowing. Fuel spillage could be hazardous to other road users.



Do not use any kind of flames or heat near the fuel system. The fuel system is under pressure. There is a risk of injury if the fuel system is leaking.

## FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE

### CAUTION



Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

**Note:** We recommend that you use only high quality fuel without additives or other engine treatments.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228, or the equivalent national specification.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

## FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL

### WARNING



Do not mix diesel with oil, gasoline or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.

### CAUTIONS



Do not add kerosene, paraffin or gasoline to diesel. This could cause damage to the fuel system.



Use diesel that meets the specification defined by **EN 590**, or the relevant national specification.

**Note:** We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.

**Note:** The use of additives or other engine treatments not approved by Ford is not recommended.

**Note:** We do not recommend the prolonged use of additives intended to prevent fuel waxing.

### Long-term storage

Most diesel fuels contain bio-diesel, it is recommended to fill the tank with purely mineral diesel (where available) or add an anti-oxidant prior to long-term storage of your vehicle exceeding two months. Your dealer can help you with a suitable anti-oxidant.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER

### WARNING



Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

### Driving with a catalytic converter

### CAUTIONS



Avoid running out of fuel.



# Fuel and Refueling

## CAUTIONS

- ⚠ Do not crank the engine for long periods.
- ⚠ Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.
- ⚠ Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump-Starting the Vehicle** (page 202).
- ⚠ Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

## FUEL FILLER DOOR

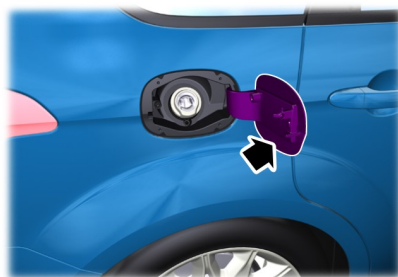
### WARNINGS

- ⚠ Take care when refueling to avoid spilling any residual fuel from the fuel nozzle.
- ⚠ Do not use any kind of flames or heat near the fuel system. The fuel system is under pressure. There is a risk of injury if the fuel system is leaking.

### CAUTION

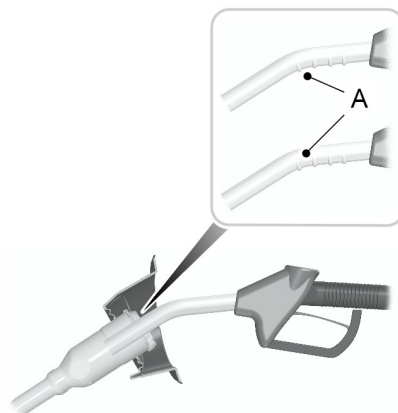
- ⚠ If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the fuel filler door briefly from a distance not less than 200 millimeters (8 inches).

**Note:** The sliding door is inhibited from opening fully when the fuel filler flap is open.



E86613

1. Press the door to open it. Open the door fully until it engages.



E139202


**Note:** When you insert the fuel nozzle, a spring loaded inhibitor will open if the correct size nozzle is detected. This helps to avoid filling up with the wrong fuel.

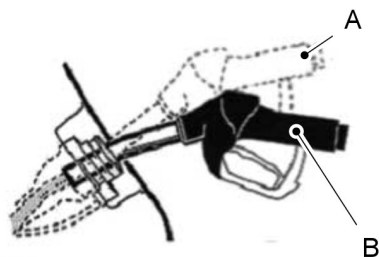
2. Insert the fuel nozzle up to and including the first notch on the nozzle **A**. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel pipe opening.



# Fuel and Refueling

## WARNING

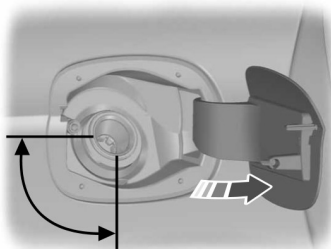
 Stop refueling after the fuel nozzle stops the second time. Additional fuel will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank which could lead to fuel overflowing. Fuel spillage could be hazardous to other road users.



E139203

- A Incorrect position
- B Correct position


3. Do not lift the nozzle during refilling. This can affect the flow of fuel and shut off of the fuel nozzle before the fuel tank is full.




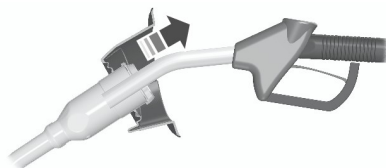
E139924

4. Operate the nozzle within the area shown.

## WARNINGS

 We recommend that you remove the fuel nozzle slowly to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank. Alternatively you can wait 10 seconds before removing the fuel nozzle.

 Do not remove the nozzle from its fully inserted position during the entire refueling process.



E119081


5. Slightly raise the fuel nozzle to remove it.

## Refueling with a fuel can

Use the funnel which is located in the glove box.

## REFUELING

### CAUTION

 Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This could damage the engine. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

The CO<sub>2</sub> and fuel consumption figures are derived from laboratory tests according to EEC Directive 80/1268/EEC and subsequent amendments and are carried out by all vehicle manufacturers.



# Fuel and Refueling

They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle. Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors including;

driving style, high speed driving, stop/start driving, air conditioning usage, the accessories fitted and towing etc.

Your Ford dealer can give you advice on improving your fuel consumption.

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### C-MAX

#### Fuel Consumption Figures

Variant	Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO2 Emissions
	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	g/km
1.0L EcoBoost	6.3 (44.8)	4.5 (62.8)	5.1 (55.4)	117
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT	8.7 (32.5)	5.3 (53.3)	6.6 (42.8)	154
1.6L EcoBoost, vehicles without start-stop	8.8 (32.1)	5.3 (53.3)	6.6 (42.8)	154
1.6L EcoBoost, vehicles with start-stop	8 (35.3)	5.3 (53.3)	6.4 (44.1)	149
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi, vehicles without start-stop	5.4 (52.3)	4.1 (68.9)	4.6 (61.4)	119
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi, vehicles with start-stop	5 (56.5)	4 (70.6)	4.4 (64.2)	114
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW, vehicles with manual transmission	6.4 (44.1)	4.4 (64.2)	5.1 (55.4)	134
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW, vehicles with automatic transmission	7.1 (39.8)	4.8 (58.9)	5.6 (50.4)	149



## Fuel and Refueling

### Grand C-MAX

#### Fuel Consumption Figures


Variant	Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO2 Emissions
	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	g/km
1.0L EcoBoost	6.4 (44.1)	4.6 (61.4)	5.2 (54.3)	119
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT	8.9 (31.7)	5.7 (49.6)	6.9 (40.9)	159
1.6L EcoBoost, vehicles without start-stop	9.2 (30.7)	5.5 (51.4)	6.9 (40.9)	159
1.6L EcoBoost, vehicles with start-stop	8.2 (34.5)	5.5 (51.4)	6.6 (42.8)	154
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi, vehicles without start-stop	5.8 (48.7)	4.4 (64.2)	4.9 (57.7)	129
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi, vehicles with start-stop	5.5 (51.4)	4.3 (65.7)	4.7 (60.1)	124
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW, vehicles with manual transmission	6.6 (42.8)	4.5 (62.8)	5.3 (53.3)	139
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW, vehicles with automatic transmission	7.4 (38.2)	5 (56.5)	5.8 (48.7)	154

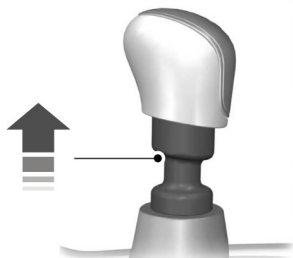


# Transmission

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION

### CAUTION

 Do not engage reverse gear when the vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.

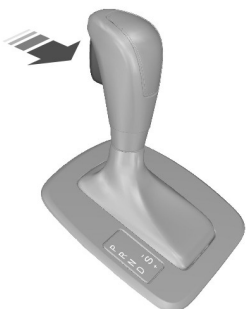


E99067

On some vehicles it is necessary to raise the collar whilst selecting reverse gear.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### Selector lever positions




E80836

- P Park
- R Reverse

- N Neutral
- D Drive
- S Sport mode and manual shifting

### WARNING

 Apply the brakes before moving the selector lever and keep them applied until you are ready to move off.


**Note:** A cold engine has a higher idle speed. This will increase the tendency for your vehicle to **creep** when you have selected a drive gear.

Press the button on the selector lever to select reverse and park.

The selector lever position will be shown in the information display.

### Park

#### WARNINGS

 Select park only when your vehicle is stationary.


 **Apply the parking brake and select park before leaving your vehicle.** Make sure that the selector lever is latched in position.

**Note:** An audible warning will sound if you open the driver's door and you have not selected park.

In this position, power is not transmitted to the drive wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the selector lever in this position.

### Reverse

#### WARNING

 Select reverse only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.



# Transmission

## Neutral

In this position, power is not transmitted to the drive wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine with the selector lever in this position.

## Drive

Select drive to shift automatically through the forward gears.

The transmission will select the appropriate gear for optimum performance based on ambient temperature, road gradient, vehicle load and driver input.

## Manual shifting - Vehicles with a 5 speed transmission

### WARNING



Do not hold the selector lever permanently in – or +.

### CAUTION



The transmission will automatically downshift when the engine speed is too low and upshift when too high.

**Note:** A shift will occur only when the vehicle speed and the engine speed are appropriate.

**Note:** In **Select** mode the current gear (1, 2, 3, 4 or 5) will be displayed on the instrument panel.

Move the selector lever to position **S**.

Push the selector lever forwards to shift down and pull it backwards to shift up.

Gears may be skipped by moving the selector lever repeatedly at short intervals.

Manual mode also provides a kickdown function. See **Kickdown**.

## Sport mode and manual shifting - Vehicles with a 6 speed transmission

**Note:** A shift will occur only when the vehicle speed and the engine speed are appropriate.

## Sport Mode

**Note:** In **Sport** mode the transmission operates as normal but gears are selected more quickly and at higher engine speeds.

**Note:** In **Sport** mode **S** will be displayed on the instrument panel.

Activate **Sport** mode by moving the selector lever to position **S**. **Sport** mode will remain active until either you shift manually up or down the gears or return the selector lever to position **D**.

## Manual shifting

### WARNING



Do not hold the selector lever permanently in – or +.

### CAUTION



The transmission will automatically downshift when the engine speed is too low.

Push the selector lever forwards to shift down and pull it backwards to shift up.

Gears may be skipped by moving the selector lever repeatedly at short intervals.

Manual mode also provides a kickdown function. See **Kickdown**.



# Transmission

## Hints on driving with an automatic transmission

### CAUTION

- ⚠ Do not idle the engine for long periods of time in drive with the brakes applied.

### Moving off

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

### Stopping

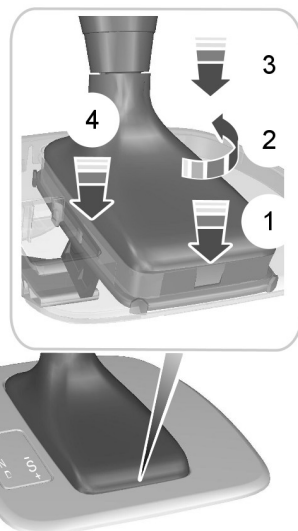
1. Release the accelerator pedal and press the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Select neutral or park.

### Kickdown

Press the accelerator pedal fully with the selector lever in the drive position to select the next lowest gear for optimum performance. Release the accelerator pedal when you no longer require kickdown.

### Emergency park position release lever

Use the lever to move the selector lever from the park position in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle has a flat battery.



E125156

1. Insert a small flat-bladed tool into the slot.
2. Turn the tool through 90 degrees.
3. Push downwards on the tool to detach the gaiter frame from the trim panel.
4. Push downwards on the gaiter frame to release the lever and move the selector lever from the park position.
5. Pull upwards on the gaiter until the gaiter frame engages in the trim panel.

**Note:** If position **P** is selected again, this procedure must be repeated.



# Brakes

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

**Note:** Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the brake lamps may flash if you brake heavily.

**Note:** Occasional brake noise is normal and often does not indicate a concern. In normal operation, the system may emit occasional or intermittent squeal or groan noises when the brakes are applied. Such noises are usually caused by environmental conditions such as cold, heat, moisture, road dust, salt or mud.

### Disc brakes

Wet brake discs result in reduced braking efficiency. Dab the brake pedal when driving from a car wash to remove the film of water.

### ABS

#### WARNING



The ABS does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

The ABS helps you to maintain full steering and directional stability when you brake heavily in an emergency, by preventing the road wheels from locking.

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

**Note:** When the system is operating, the brake pedal will pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

The ABS will not eliminate the risks when:

- you drive too close to the vehicle in front of you
- the vehicle is aquaplaning
- you take corners too fast
- the road surface is poor.

## PARKING BRAKE

#### WARNING



Vehicles with an automatic transmission should always be left with the selector lever in position **P (Park)**.

- Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
- Pull the parking brake lever up smartly to its fullest extent.
- Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.
- If your vehicle is parked on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear or **P (Park)** and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.
- If your vehicle is parked on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear or **P (Park)** and turn the steering wheel towards the curb.

To release the parking brake, press the brake pedal firmly, pull the lever up slightly, depress the release button and push the lever down.



# Stability Control

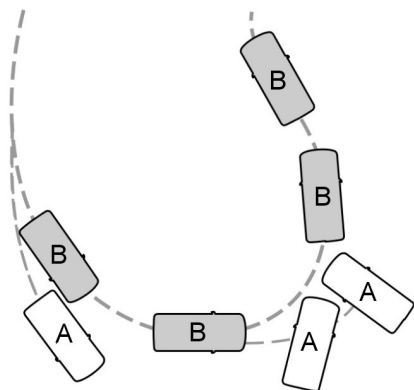
## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Electronic stability program (ESP)

#### WARNING



ESP does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



E72903

- A without ESP
- B with ESP

The ESP supports stability when the vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. This is performed by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque as needed.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque and may brake individual wheels if they spin when you accelerate. This improves your ability to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.

### Stability control (ESP) warning lamp

The ESP warning lamp will flash when the system is operating. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 77).

### Emergency brake assist

#### WARNING



Emergency brake assist does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

Emergency brake assist will detect when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It will provide maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Emergency brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

### Trailer stability control

#### WARNING



Trailer stability control does not relieve you of your responsibility to tow with due care and attention.

Trailer stability control is an enhanced feature of ESP, and automatically detects when an attached trailer starts to sway.

If this situation occurs, the system will automatically brake individual wheels to stabilize the trailer and vehicle. In case a very severe sway is detected, the engine torque will be reduced and the vehicle will be slowed automatically.

## USING STABILITY CONTROL

**Note:** The system will be switched on automatically every time you switch the ignition on.

To turn the system off and on. See **Information Displays** (page 81).



# Hill Start Assist

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The system makes it easier to pull away when the vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, the vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for a short time after you release the brake pedal. During this time, you have time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal and pull away. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent the vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

### WARNING



The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave the vehicle, always apply the parking brake and select first or reverse gear.

## USING HILL START ASSIST

The system is activated automatically when you stop your vehicle on a slope greater than 3%. The system operates with the vehicle facing downhill if reverse gear is selected and with the vehicle facing uphill if any forward gear is selected.

### Vehicles with manual transmission only

The system can be switched on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 81).

### Activating the system

#### WARNINGS



You must remain in the vehicle once you have activated the system.

#### WARNINGS



At all times you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.



If a malfunction is detected when the system is active, the system will be deactivated and a message will be shown in the display. See **Information Messages** (page 87).

You can activate the system only if the following conditions have been met:

- The engine is running.
- The system is switched on.
- On vehicles with manual transmission, the clutch pedal is pressed.
- No failure mode is present.

### To activate the system:

1. Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. If the sensors detect that the vehicle is on a slope the system will be activated automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, the vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for a short time. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will be released automatically.

### Deactivating the system

To deactivate the system, perform **one** of the following:



## Hill Start Assist

---

- Wait for a short time until the system deactivates automatically.
- If a forward gear was selected when the system became active, select reverse gear.
- If reverse gear was selected when the system became active, select a forward gear.



# Parking Aids

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

### CAUTIONS



Vehicles fitted with a trailer tow module not approved by us may not correctly detect obstacles.



The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.



The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.



The parking aid does not detect obstacles moving away from the vehicle. They will only be detected shortly after they start to move towards the vehicle again.



If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the sensors briefly from a distance not less than 20 centimeters (8 inches).



Parking aid sends tones via the audio system fitted and approved by us. If this is not working the parking aid system will not work.

**Note:** On vehicles fitted with a tow ball arm, the rear parking aid is deactivated automatically when any trailer lamps (or lighting boards) are connected to the 13-pin socket via a trailer tow module we have approved.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice and snow. Do not clean with sharp objects.

**Note:** The parking aid may emit false tones if it detects a signal using the same frequency as the sensors or if the vehicle is fully laden.

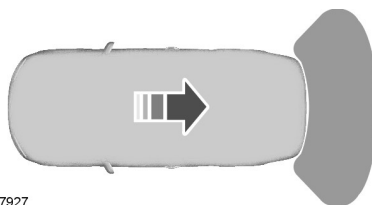
**Note:** The outer sensors may detect the side walls of a garage. If the distance between the outer sensor and the side wall remains constant for three seconds, the tone will switch off. As you continue, the inner sensors will detect rearward objects.

## PARKING AID - VEHICLES WITH: REAR PARKING AID

### WARNING



The parking aid does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



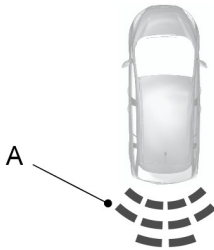
E77927

The parking aid is automatically activated when you select reverse gear with the ignition switched on.

You will hear an intermittent tone at a distance of approximately 150 centimeters (59 inches) between the obstacle and rear bumper and approximately 50 centimeters (20 inches) to the side. Decreasing the distance accelerates the intermittent tone.



# Parking Aids



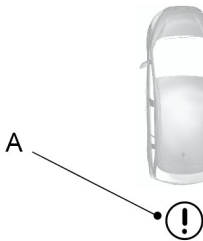
E130178

A Distance Indicator.

As the distance decreases the indicator moves towards the vehicle.

A continuous tone will start at a distance of less than 30 centimeters (11 inches) to the rear bumper.

**Note:** *On Vehicles with a tow bar fitted and approved by us the continuous tone will start at a distance of 45 centimeters (18 inches) from the rear bumper.*



E130179

A Malfunction indicator.

**Note:** *If a malfunction is indicated the system will be disabled. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.*



E130180

A trailer symbol indicates there is a trailer attached and the system is disabled.

## PARKING AID - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT AND REAR PARKING AID

### WARNING



The parking aid does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

### Switching the parking aid on and off

The parking aid is per default off. To switch the parking aid on, select reverse gear or press the switch in the instrument panel. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9).

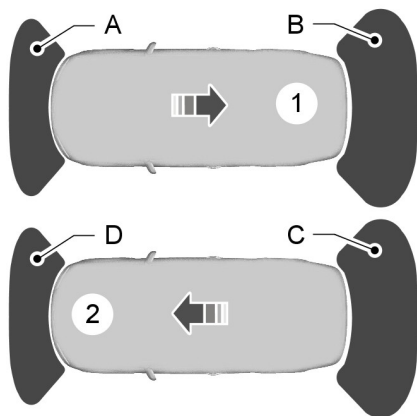
The light in the switch illuminates when the parking aid is activated.

To turn it off, press the switch again.



# Parking Aids

## Maneuvering with the parking aid



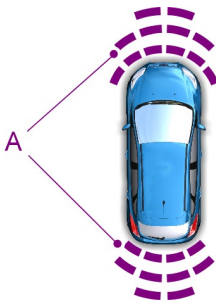
E130381

- 1 Reverse gear selected
- 2 Neutral or forward gear selected
- A Display and tone
- B Display and tone
- C Display only
- D Display and tone

You will hear an intermittent tone at a distance of approximately 150 centimeters (59 inches) between the obstacle and rear bumper, approximately 80 centimeters (31 inches) between the obstacle and front bumper and approximately 50 centimeters (20 inches) to the side. Decreasing the distance accelerates the intermittent tone. A continuous tone will start at a distance of less than 30 centimeters (11 inches) to the front or rear bumper.

**Note:** On vehicles with a tow bar fitted and approved by us the continuous tone will start at a distance of 45 centimeters (18 inches) from the rear bumper.

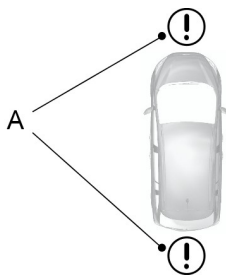
You will hear an alternating tone from the front and rear if obstacles are closer than 30 centimeters (11 inches) to the front and rear bumpers.



E130382

A Distance Indicator.

As the distance decreases the indicator moves towards the vehicle.



E130383

A Malfunction indicator.

**Note:** If a malfunction is indicated the system will be disabled. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.



## Parking Aids

---



E130180

A trailer symbol indicates there is a trailer attached and the rear sensors are disabled.



# Active Park Assist

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



At all times you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.



You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times in the manoeuvre.



Vehicles with overhanging loads, street furniture and other items may not be detected by the system. You must make sure that the selected space is suitable for parking.



Do not use the system if a trailer is attached to the vehicle.



Do not use the system if a bike rack is attached to the back of the vehicle.



Do not use the system if an overhanging item is attached to the roof.



If the manoeuvre is interrupted before completion, the system will be disabled. The steering wheel position will not indicate the true position of the steering and you will have to take control of the vehicle.



Make sure that loose clothing, your hands or your arms do not get caught in the rotating steering wheel.

The system will detect a suitable parallel parking space and steer the vehicle into the space. The system controls the steering while the driver controls the accelerator, transmission and brakes. The manoeuvre can be stopped at any time by holding the steering wheel or pressing the active park assist switch. See **At a Glance** (page 9).

The system will visually and audibly instruct the driver throughout the procedure to safely park the vehicle.

## USING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

### CAUTIONS



The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.



The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.



The sensors may not detect the curb.

**Note:** *If the traction control system is disabled active park assist will not be available. See **General Information** (page 81).*

The system will not align the vehicle correctly if:

- a spare tire, or a tire worn significantly more than the other tires is used
- the factory installed tire size is not used on the vehicle
- the tires skid
- you allow the vehicle to roll
- the weather conditions are poor (heavy rain, snow, fog, etc).

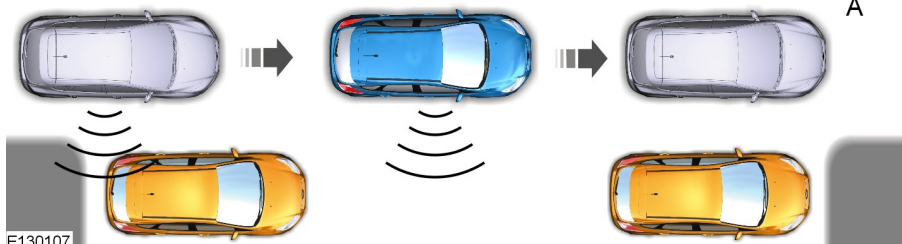


## Active Park Assist

Move forwards at a maximum speed of 30 km/h (18 mph). Press the active park assist switch. See **At a Glance** (page 9). Use the direction indicator lever to select searching either to the left-hand side or

right-hand side of the vehicle.

**Note:** If no selection is made via the direction indicator lever the system will default to the passenger side of the vehicle.



**Note:** To disable the chimes: See **Personalized Settings** (page 87).

The information and entertainment display will inform you and a chime will be heard when a suitable space is found. To park the vehicle, follow the instructions on the information and entertainment display.

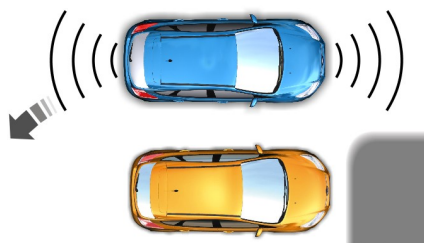
**Note:** The arrow symbols or graphics in the display indicate on which side of the vehicle the system will park. The display will also advise you when to select reverse gear.

Slow down and stop at approximately position **A**, then follow the system instructions.



### WARNING

**!** If a speed of 10 km/h (6 mph) is exceeded the system will be disabled and you will need to take full control of the vehicle.



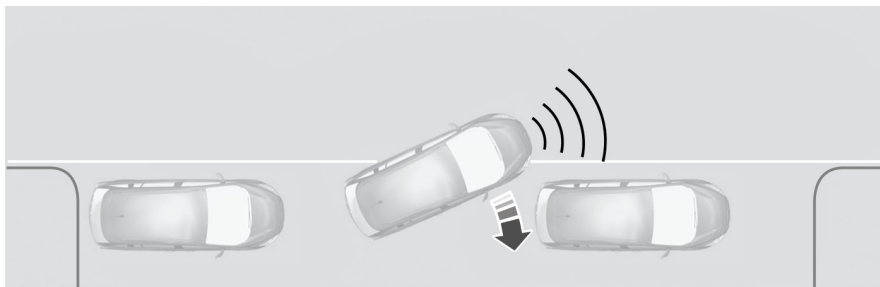
Move the vehicle backwards cautiously using the accelerator and brake pedals to control the vehicle. Parking aid warning tones will sound. Stop the vehicle when you hear a continuous tone.

You can take control of the maneuver by holding the steering wheel. A message may appear that the system can be resumed. To accept this message press the active park assist switch. See **At a Glance** (page 9).



## Active Park Assist

---



E130109

Move the vehicle forwards. Stop the vehicle when you hear a continuous tone.

Repeat the above steps until the vehicle is satisfactory parked. The display will indicate when the system has finished the maneuver.



# Rear view camera

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The camera is a visual aid for use when reversing.

### WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

### CAUTIONS



If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the camera briefly from a distance not less than 20 centimeters (8 inches).



Do not apply pressure to the camera.

**Note:** *Keep the camera free from dirt, ice and snow. Do not clean with sharp objects, degreaser, wax or organic products. Use only a soft cloth.*

During operation, guide lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and approximate distance from rearward objects.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA

### WARNINGS



The operation of the camera may vary depending on the ambient temperature, vehicle and road conditions.



The distances shown in the display may differ from the actual distance.



Do not place objects in front of the camera.

The camera is located on the luggage compartment lid near the handle.



E99105

## Activating the rear view camera

### CAUTION



The camera may not detect objects that are close to the vehicle.

With the ignition and the audio unit switched on:

1. Press the parking aid switch in the instrument panel. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 9). Or,
2. Engage reverse gear.

The image is displayed on the screen.

The lamp in the switch illuminates when the system is activated.

The camera may not operate correctly in the following conditions:

- Dark areas.
- Intense light.
- If the ambient temperature increases or decreases rapidly.
- If the camera is wet, for example in rain or high humidity.
- If the camera's view is obstructed, for example by mud.



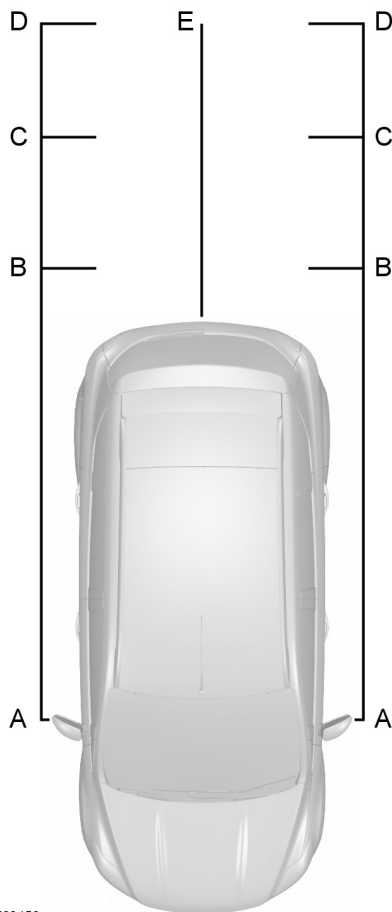
## Rear view camera

### Using the display

#### CAUTIONS

- ⚠ Obstacles above the camera position will not be shown. Inspect the area behind your vehicle if necessary.
- ⚠ Marks are for general guidance only, and are calculated for vehicles in maximum load conditions on an even road surface.

The lines show a projected vehicle path (based on the current steering wheel angle) and the distance from the exterior mirrors and rear bumper.



E99458

- A Exterior mirror clearance - 0.1 meter (4 inches)
- B Red - up to 0.3 (12 inches)
- C Amber - 0.3 - 0.6 meter (12 - 24 inches)



## Rear view camera

---

- D Green - 0.6 - 0.9 meter (24 - 35 inches)
- E Amber - center line of the projected vehicle path

**Note:** *The green line is extended from 0.9 meter (35 inches) up to a distance of 3.2 meters (126 inches).*

**Note:** *When reversing with a trailer, the lines on the screen are not shown. The camera will show the vehicle direction and not the trailer.*

### Deactivating the rear view camera

**Note:** *Disengage reverse gear. The display will stay on for a short period before switching off.*

**Note:** *The system will automatically switch off once the vehicle speed has reached approximately 15 km/h (9 mph).*

Press the parking aid switch in the instrument panel. For item location: See

**At a Glance** (page 9).

### Vehicles with parking aid

The display will additionally show a coloured distance bar. This guide indicates the distance from the rear bumper to the detected obstacle.

These are colour coded as follows:

- Green - 0.6 to 1.8 meters (24 - 71 inches).
- Amber - 0.3 to 0.6 meter (12 - 24 inches).
- Red - 0.3 meter (12 inches) or less.



# Cruise Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

Cruise control allows you to control your speed using the switches on the steering wheel. You can use cruise control when you exceed approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

## USING CRUISE CONTROL

### WARNING



Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, on twisty roads or when the road surface is slippery.

## Switching cruise control on



E130072

**Note:** The system is ready for you to set a speed.

## Setting a speed

Press the **SET+** switch or the **SET-** switch to store and maintain your current speed. The cruise control indicator will illuminate. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 77).

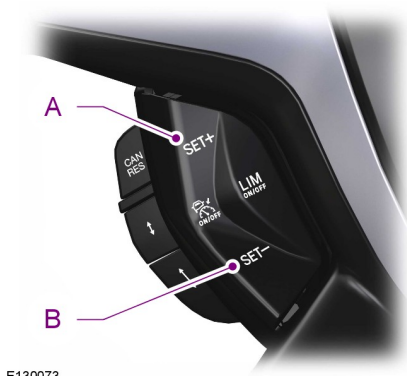
## Changing the set speed

### WARNING



When you are going downhill, your speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes. Change down a gear and press the **SET-** switch to assist the system in maintaining the set speed.

**Note:** If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, you will return to the speed that you previously set.



E130073

- A Accelerate
- B Decelerate



# Cruise Control

---

## Cancelling the set speed

Press the brake pedal or pull the **CAN** switch.

**Note:** *The system will no longer control your speed. The cruise control indicator will not illuminate but the system will retain the speed that you previously set.*

## Resuming the set speed

Pull the **RES** switch.

The cruise control indicator will illuminate and the system will attempt to resume the speed that you previously set.

## Switching cruise control off



E130072

The system will not retain the speed that you previously set. The cruise control indicator will not illuminate.



# Speed Limiter

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNING



When you are going downhill, your speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning will be given.

The system allows you to set a speed, to which the vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed will become the effective maximum speed of the vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

## USING THE SPEED LIMITER

**Note:** *The set speed limit can be intentionally exceeded for a short period if required, for example when overtaking.*

The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.



E133198

- A Set speed increase
- B Speed limiter on/off
- C Set speed decrease
- D Speed limiter cancel/resume

## Switching the system on and off

Press switch **B**. The information display will prompt for a speed to be set.

## Setting the speed limit

Use the cruise control switches to alter the maximum speed setting.

Press switch **A** or switch **C** to select your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.

Pull switch **D** to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The information display will confirm deactivation by showing the set speed crossed out.

Pull switch **D** again to resume the limiter. The information display will confirm the system is active by showing the set speed again.

## Intentionally exceeding the set speed limit

Depress the accelerator fully to temporarily deactivate the system. The system will reactivate once the vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

## System warnings

If the set limit is accidentally exceeded, for example driving downhill, the information display will show the set speed flashing together with an audible warning chime.

If the set limit is intentionally exceeded the information display will show the set speed crossed out.



# Driver Alert

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



At all times you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.



If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.



Take regular rest breaks as required and do not wait for the system to warn you if you feel tired.



Take rest breaks only where it is safe to do so.



Certain driving styles and behavior may result in the system issuing a warning even if you are not feeling tired.

### CAUTIONS



In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all influence the sensor.



The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



The system may not operate in areas during roadworks construction.



The system may not operate on roads with sharp bends or narrow lanes.



Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.



If your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

**Note:** Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** The system is intended as a driver aid when driving on fast main roads and highways.

**Note:** The system calculates an alertness level at vehicle speeds above approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior using various inputs including the front camera sensor.

If the system detects that you are becoming drowsy or there is a deterioration in your driving, the system will alert you.

## USING DRIVER ALERT

### Switching the system on and off

**Note:** The system status will remain unchanged during ignition cycles.

Activate the system using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 81).

Once activated the system will calculate your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings, and other factors.

### System warnings

**Note:** The system will not issue warnings below approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The warning system is in two stages. At first the system issues a temporary warning that a rest should be taken. This message will only appear for a short time. If a rest is not then taken a further warning may be issued which will remain in the information display until canceled. See **Information Messages** (page 87).

Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to remove the warning.

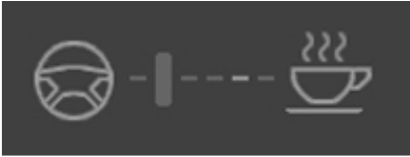


# Driver Alert

## System display

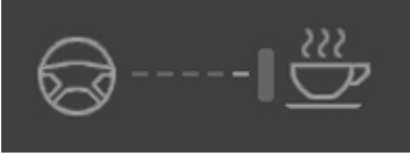
When active the system will run automatically in the background and only issue warnings if required. You can view the status at any time using the information display. See **General Information** (page 81).

The alertness level is shown by six steps as a colored bar.



E131358

Alertness level is fine, no rest required.



E131359

Alertness level is critical, indicating that a rest should be taken as soon as safely possible.

The status bar will travel from left to right as the calculated alertness level decreases. As the rest icon is approached the color turns from green to yellow and then finally red when a rest break must be taken.

- Green - No rest required.
- Yellow - First (temporary) warning.
- Red - Second warning.

**Note:** The alertness level will be shown in grey if the camera sensor cannot track the road lane markings or if the vehicle speed drops below approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

## Resetting the system














You can reset the system by either:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping the vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.





## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS

-  The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.
-  At all times you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.
-  Never look directly into the sensor with any type of object, there is a risk of eye injury.
-  If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.
-  To achieve full system performance, the brake system needs to be bedded in. See **Breaking-In** (page 175).
-  The system performance may vary depending on the vehicle and road conditions.
-  The system will not react to vehicles driving in a different direction.
-  The system will not react to bicycles, motorcycles, people or animals.
-  When the ignition is on the sensor will constantly transmit a laser beam.
-  The system will not operate during harsh acceleration and steering.
-  In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and ice can all influence the sensor.
-  Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.
-  If your vehicle is fitted with a windshield not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

### WARNINGS

-  If the engine stops after the system has been activated, the hazard warning flashers will be activated.
-  The system may not function when driving around sharp bends.

**Note:** *Keep the windscreen free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

**Note:** *Keep the hood free of ice and snow, otherwise the system may not function correctly.*

A sensor is mounted behind the interior rear view mirror. It continuously monitors conditions to decide when to intervene.

The system is designed to help you reduce low speed collisions into the rear of another vehicle. It will also help you reduce the impact damage or potentially avoid the collision completely.

The system operates at speeds below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) by applying the brakes when the sensor detects that a collision is likely.


You must depress the brake pedal to obtain full braking force.

When the system is braking or has automatically applied the brakes, a message will be shown in the display.

For laser sensor information and data: See **Type approvals** (page 284).

## USING ACTIVE CITY STOP

### WARNING

-  Never look directly into the sensor with any type of object, there is a risk of eye injury.



## Switching the system on and off

**Note:** *The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.*

In certain situations it is advisable to disable the system, for example:

- Driving off road when objects may cover the windshield.
- Driving through a car wash facility.

You can switch the system on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 81).













# Driving Aids

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

### Lane Keeping Alert

#### Principle of Operation

##### WARNINGS

-  The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.
-  At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.
-  If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.
-  The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings such as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.
-  In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all influence the sensor.
-  The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
-  The system may not operate in areas during roadwork construction.
-  The system may not operate on roads with sharp bends or narrow lanes.
-  Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.
-  If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

**Note:** Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** The system may assist you when driving on fast main roads and freeways.

**Note:** The system may not operate during hard braking or acceleration and when you are intentionally steering your vehicle.

**Note:** The system will operate with a minimum of one tracked lane marking.

**Note:** The system will only operate above vehicle speeds of approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

The sensor is located behind the interior mirror. It continuously monitors conditions to alert you of unintentional lane drifting at high speeds.

The system will automatically detect and track the lane markings on the road. If your vehicle unintentionally drifts toward the road lane markings, a warning will be shown in the display. There is also a warning given in the form of a vibration felt through the steering wheel.

#### Using Lane Keeping Alert

##### Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** When you switch the system off, a warning indicator will remain illuminated in the information display. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 77).

**Note:** The system status and settings will remain unchanged when you switch the ignition on and off.



E132099

Switch the system on and off using the button on the direction indicator stalk.



# Driving Aids

Press the button twice to switch the system on. Press the button once to switch the system off.

## Setting the Steering Wheel Vibration Level

The system has three intensity levels which you can set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 81).

## Setting the System Sensitivity

You can adjust how quickly the system warns you of a dangerous situation. The system has two sensitivity levels which you can set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 81).

## System Warnings



E132851

A column of lane markings are displayed either side of the vehicle graphic.

The lane markings are color coded as follows:

- Green: The system is ready to warn you of any unintentional lane departure.
- Red: Your vehicle is approaching or is too close to the detected lane boundary. Take immediate safe action to reposition your vehicle.
- Gray: The relevant lane boundary will be suppressed.

Instances where a lane boundary may be suppressed:

- Lane markings on the road may not be detected by the sensor.
- You turn the direction indicator for that side of your vehicle on.
- If you apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- Your vehicle speed is outside the operating limits.
- If there is an anti-lock brake or stability control intervention.
- Narrow lane width.

If the lane markings in the display turn red or you feel a vibration through the steering wheel you must take immediate and safe action to align your vehicle. Correct any unintended lane drift immediately.

## Lane Keeping Aid

### Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** The system does not automatically turn on every time you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** When you switch the system on, this will automatically turn lane keeping alert on.



E132099

Switch the system on and off using the button on the indicator stalk.

Press the button three times to switch the system on. Press the button again to switch the system off.



# Driving Aids

## Setting the System Sensitivity

You can adjust how quickly the system intervenes in a dangerous situation. The system has two sensitivity levels which you can set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 81).

## System Warnings



E132651

A column of lane markings are displayed either side of the vehicle graphic.

The lane markings are color coded as follows:

- Green: The system is ready to warn you of any unintentional lane departure.
- Yellow: The system will automatically apply a steering torque to align your vehicle path and correct any unintended lane drift.
- Red: Your vehicle is approaching or is too close to the detected lane boundary. The steering wheel will give a vibration warning. Take immediate safe action to reposition your vehicle.

Instances where a lane boundary may be suppressed:

- Lane markings on the road may not be detected by the sensor.
- You turn the direction indicator for that side of your vehicle on.

- If you apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- Your vehicle speed is outside the operating limits.
- If there is an anti-lock brake or stability control intervention.
- Narrow lane width.

**Note:** You can override the system at any time during its operation by turning the steering wheel.

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

### Principle of Operation

#### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.



If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.

**Note:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.

**Note:** Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

**Note:** If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

**Note:** Always fit Ford original parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.



# Driving Aids

**Note:** Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** The system may not detect all traffic signs and may read signs incorrectly.

**Note:** The system is designed to automatically detect traffic signs meeting the Vienna convention.

**Note:** Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

There is a sensor mounted behind the interior rear view mirror. It continuously monitors road signs to inform you of the current speed limit and overtaking regulations.

The system automatically detects recognisable traffic signs, such as:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.

When the system recognises a traffic sign, it will be shown in the display.

## Using the System

### Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** The system status and settings will remain unchanged during ignition cycles.

You can switch the system on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 81).

### Setting the System Speed Warning

The system has a number of speed warning levels which can be set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 81).

## System Display



E132994

The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the information display.

The system display is in four stages as follows:

1. All new recognizable traffic signs will appear brighter than the other traffic signs in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they will be shown normally.
3. After a predetermined distance they will be shown greyed out.
4. After another predetermined distance they will be deleted.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, this sign is indicated as a box below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.



If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.




# Load Carrying

## GENERAL INFORMATION

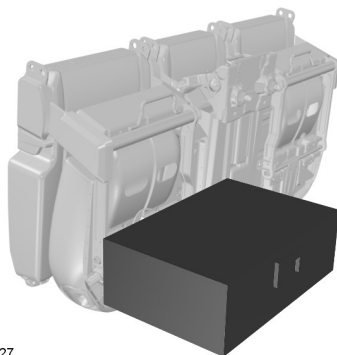
### WARNINGS

-  Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.
-  Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.
-  Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.
-  Do not drive with the tailgate or rear door open. Exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle.
-  Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 221).
-  Heavy loads, when placed in the passenger compartment, should be on or behind folded rear seats as shown. See **Rear Seats** (page 108).

### CAUTION

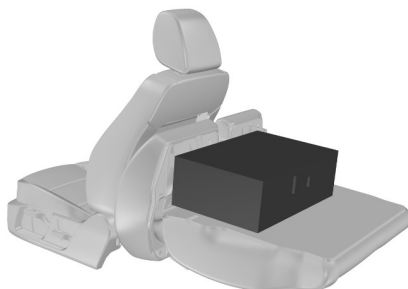
-  Do not allow items to contact the rear windows.

## C-Max



E98627

## Grand C-Max



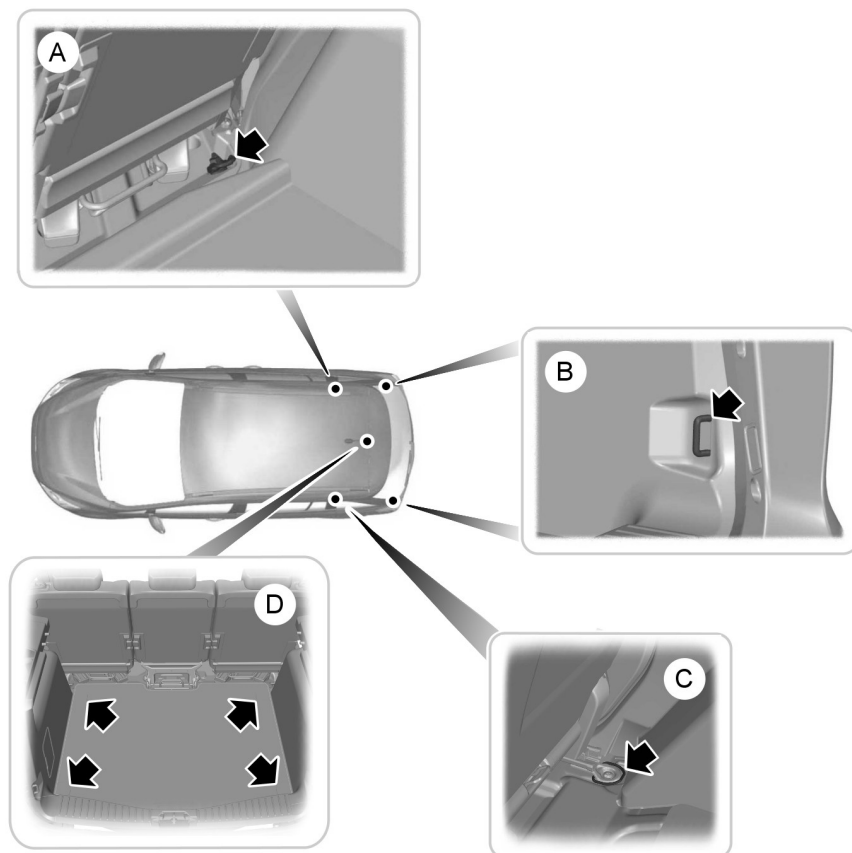
E97377

## LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS

**Note:** Item **D** is available only on vehicles with a tire repair kit.



# Load Carrying



E130146

- A C-MAX
- B C-MAX and Grand C-MAX
- C Grand C-MAX
- D C-MAX



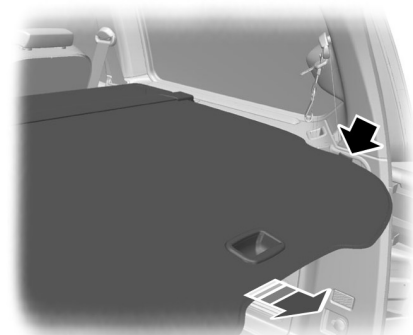
# Load Carrying

## LUGGAGE COVERS

### WARNING



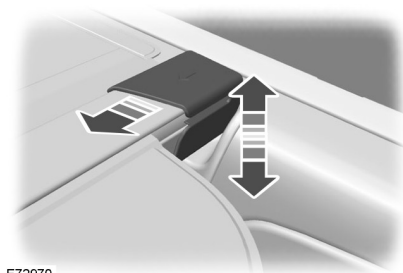
Do not place objects on the luggage cover.



E72969

Pull out the cover and secure it in the retaining points.

Release it from the retaining points and let it roll back into the case. Clip the retaining hook onto the case.



E72970

To remove or install the cover, push either end of the case inwards.

## CARGO NETS

### C-MAX

### WARNING



Luggage retention net anchor points are not fitted behind the first or second row seats.

### Grand C-MAX

### WARNING



Luggage retention net anchor points are not fitted behind the first row seats, but are fitted behind the second row seats.

## Luggage retention net

### Installing the net

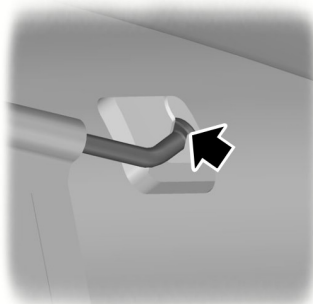
### CAUTIONS



Do not move the rear seats when the cargo net is installed.



Do not use the cargo net if the third row seats are in use.



E87052



# Load Carrying

1. Push the ends of the upper bar towards each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forwards into the narrow section of the retainers.

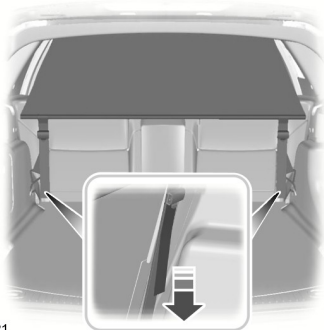


E130320

**Note:** Make sure the center seat is upright.

**Note:** Only install the cargo net behind the rear seats.

2. Attach the net to the luggage anchor points. See **Luggage Anchor Points** (page 165).



E130321

3. Tighten the belts.

## Removing the net




E130322


1. Release the belts.
2. Remove the net from the luggage anchor points.
3. Remove the upper bars.

## ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS


### Roof rack

#### WARNINGS

 If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.

 Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

#### CAUTION

 Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load of 75 kilograms (165 pounds) (including the roof rack).

Check the security of the roof rack and tighten its fittings as follows:



# Load Carrying

- before starting
- after driving 50 kilometers (30 miles)
- at 1000 kilometers (600 miles) intervals.

To reduce fuel consumption, cross rails should be removed when not in use.

## Installing the crossbars

### WARNING



Distribute the load evenly over the loading area and keep the center of gravity as low as possible. Secure the load well to prevent it from slipping. Never place any loads directly onto the roof surface.

### CAUTION

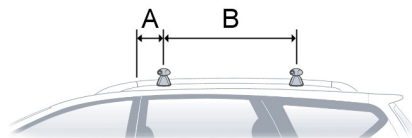


Remove the crossbars before entering an automatic car wash.

**Note:** The side mounting tracks are designed such that crossbars (for bicycle carriers, ski carriers etc.) from the Ford accessories range can be fitted.

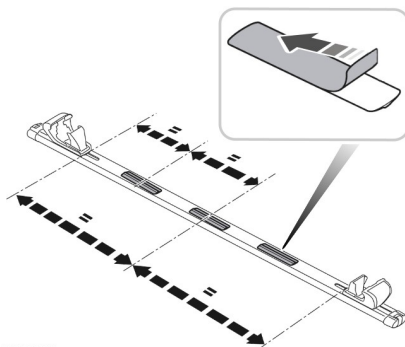
**Note:** Before installing the crossbars, clean the side mounting tracks with water and a sponge.

**Note:** Position the crossbars as shown.



E98206

- A 120 mm (4.7 inches)  
B 800 mm (31.5 inches)

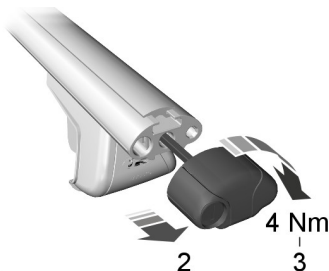


E130001

**Note:** Adhesive pads are supplied to help reduce the buffeting noise.

**Note:** Make sure the surface of the crossbars is clean before attaching the adhesive pads.

1. Remove the backing and attach the adhesive pads to the crossbars in the positions shown.

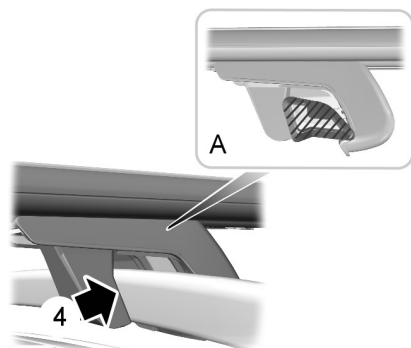


E130066

2. Pull the handle out.
3. Turn the handle clockwise to bring the crossbar in contact with the rail.



# Load Carrying



E130067

**Note:** Make sure there is no gap between crossbar and rail (A).

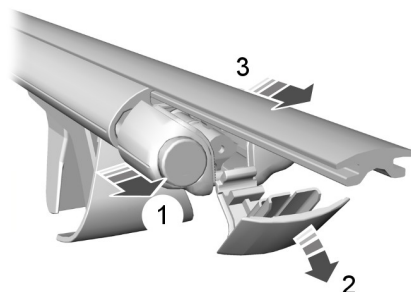
4. Turn the handle a minimum of 3.5 revolutions.



E98208

5. Push the handle in. Turn the key clockwise to lock.
6. Remove the key.

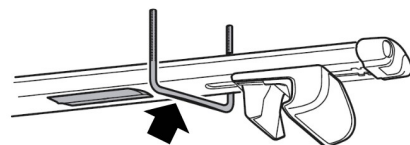
## Accessing the T-notch



E98209

1. Pull the handle out.
2. Lower the cover.
3. Remove the sliding bar.

## Installing a roof box



E130002

Make sure the adhesive pads are not in contact with the installation bolt.



# Towing

## TOWING A TRAILER

### WARNINGS



Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h). This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



The rear tire pressures must be increased by 3 psi (0.2 bar) above specification. Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the tire sidewall. This could cause serious personal injury.



Do not exceed the maximum gross train weight stated on your vehicle identification plate. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 221).



Do not exceed the maximum permissible trailer nose weight (vertical weight on the tow ball) as stated in the vehicle specification chart. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



The anti-lock braking system does not control the overrun brake on the trailer. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

### When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, the load in your trailer should be placed toward the nose, within the maximum nose load, as this gives the best stability.

- The trailer nose weight (vertical weight on the tow ball), is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.
- The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight.
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying.
- Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

**Note:** *The maximum permissible trailer nose weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer nose weight may be lower.*

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 3281 feet (1000 meters) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 3281 feet (1000 metres), the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight must be reduced by 10% for every extra 3281 feet (1000 metres).

**Note:** *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have tow bars fitted. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

### Trailer Lighting

The electrical system on your vehicle is not suitable for towing trailers with LED lamps.

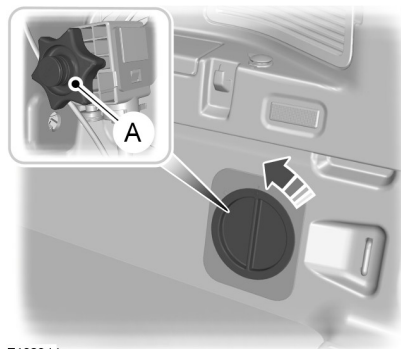


# Towing

## RETRACTABLE TOW BALL

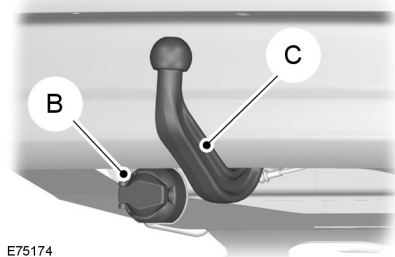
### CAUTION

⚠ Only move the tow ball arm with your hand. Never use your foot or auxiliary tools as damage to the mechanism may result.



E130344

You can turn the retractable tow ball arm through 90 degrees using the handwheel **A**.



E75174

A 13-pin trailer socket **B** is provided underneath the rear bumper next to the tow ball arm **C**.

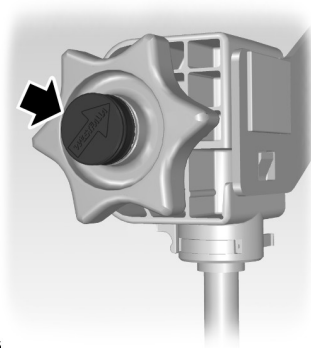
## Swivelling the tow ball in

### WARNINGS

- ⚠ Keep your hands away from the handwheel as it rotates during the locking process.
- ⚠ You will hear a warning tone when the tow ball arm is not in one of the locked positions. If you do not hear the tone when moving the tow ball arm, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician.

### CAUTION

- ⚠ Before retracting the ball neck into its stowage position always unhitch the trailer or dismantle load carriers and their attachments. Dismantle attachments for tracking stabilization. Remove the plug for the trailer power supply and the adapter from the socket. Failure to do so may result in damage to the bumper.

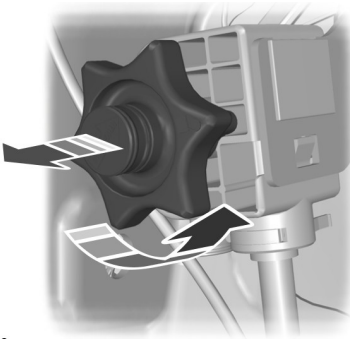


E130345

1. Insert the key into the handwheel and turn it clockwise to unlock.

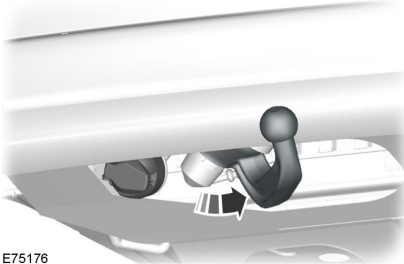


# Towing



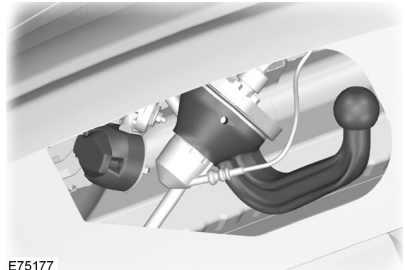
E130346

2. Pull the handwheel out and turn it counterclockwise to the stop. The tow ball arm automatically swivels into a midway position.



E75176

3. Release the handwheel. The tow ball arm is not locked. This is indicated by the warning tone and the handwheel projects about five millimeters (0.2 inch) from its housing.



E75177

4. Manually turn the tow ball arm steadily from its midway position to the stop in the stowage position. The tow ball arm automatically locks in the end position. The locking process is clearly audible if the level of background noise is not too high. When the locking process is completed, the warning tone stops and the handwheel will return to its original position.
5. Turn the key counterclockwise and remove it.

## Swivelling the tow ball out

### WARNING



You will hear a warning tone when the tow ball arm is not in one of the locked positions. If you do not hear the tone when moving the tow ball arm, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician.

1. Insert the key into the handwheel and turn it clockwise to unlock.
2. Pull the handwheel out and turn it counterclockwise to the stop. The tow ball arm automatically swivels into the midway position.



# Towing

## Driving with a trailer

### WARNING



If any of the conditions below cannot be met, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician.

Before starting your journey, make sure that the tow ball arm is properly locked. Check that:

- there is no warning tone when the locking procedure has been completed
- the handwheel is in its housing and that there is no gap
- you have locked the handwheel (counterclockwise) and removed the key
- the tow ball arm is locked. It must not move when jerked.

## Maintenance

### CAUTIONS



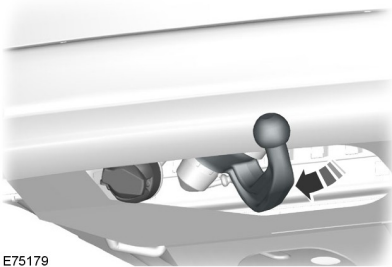
The towing hitch and control unit are maintenance-free. Do not grease or oil them.



Only the manufacturer should carry out repairs or dismantle the towing hitch.

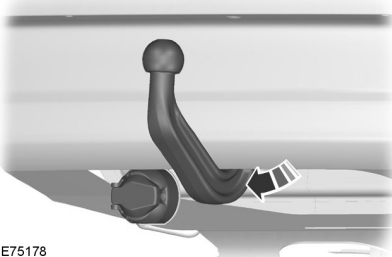


If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, do not direct the spray onto the swivel joint of the tow ball arm.



E75179

3. Release the handwheel. The tow ball arm is not locked. This is indicated by the warning tone and the handwheel projects about five millimeters (0.2 inch) from its housing.



E75178

4. Manually turn the tow ball arm steadily from its midway position to the stop in the operating position. The tow ball arm automatically locks in the end position. The locking process is clearly audible if the level of background noise is not too high. When the locking process is completed, the warning tone stops and the handwheel will return to its original position.
5. Turn the key counterclockwise and remove it.



# Driving Hints

---

## BREAKING-IN

### Tires

#### WARNING



New tires need to be run-in for approximately 500 kilometers (300 miles). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

---

### Brakes and clutch

#### WARNING



Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 150 kilometers (100 miles) in town and for the first 1500 kilometers (1000 miles) on freeways.

---

### Engine

#### CAUTION



Avoid driving too fast during the first 1500 kilometers (1000 miles). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

---

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -30°C (-22°F).

## DRIVING THROUGH WATER

### Driving through water

#### CAUTIONS



Drive through water in an emergency only, and not as part of normal driving.



Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

---

In an emergency, the vehicle can be driven through water to a maximum depth of 200 millimeters (8 inches) and at a maximum speed of 10 km/h (6 mph). Extra caution should be exercised when driving through flowing water.

When driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop the vehicle. After driving through water, and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Depress the brake pedal lightly and check that full brake function is achieved.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the vehicle's lights are fully operational.
- Check the power assistance of the steering system.



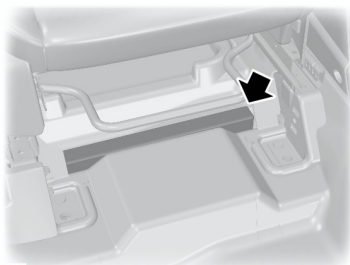
# Roadside Emergencies

---

## FIRST AID KIT

Space is provided in the under floor storage compartment to store a first aid kit.

## WARNING TRIANGLE



E130151

Slide the front seat fully rearwards. See **Seats** (page 105).

## EMERGENCY EXIT

If your vehicle has been involved in an accident, occupants seated in the third row must evacuate the vehicle using the second row center seat.



E129302

Pull the red handle and fold the seatback forward.



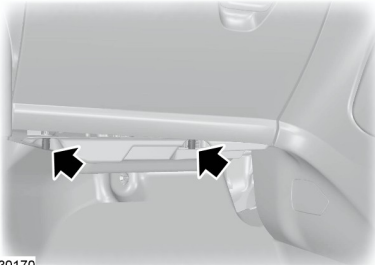
# Fuses

## FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

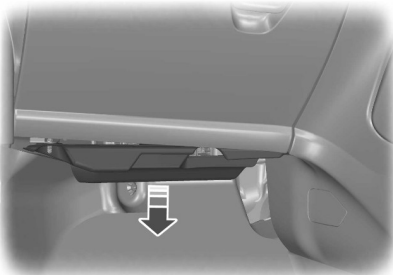
### Engine compartment fuse box

This fuse box is located in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 188).

### Passenger compartment fuse box



E130170

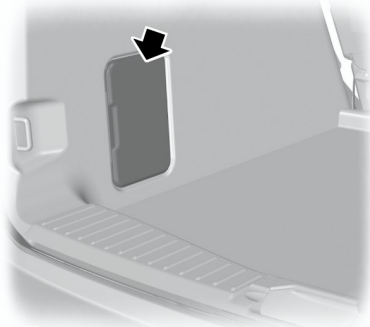


E130171

1. Pinch the retaining clips to release the cover.
2. Lower the fuse box cover and pull it towards you.

Install in the reverse order.

### Load compartment fuse box



E130147

## CHANGING A FUSE

### WARNINGS



Do not modify the electrical system of your vehicle in any way. Have repairs to the electrical system and the replacement of relays and high current fuses carried out by a properly trained technician.



Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off before touching or attempting to change a fuse.

### CAUTION



Fit a replacement fuse with the same rating as the one you have removed.

**Note:** You can identify a blown fuse by a break in the filament.

**Note:** All fuses, except high current fuses, are a push fit.

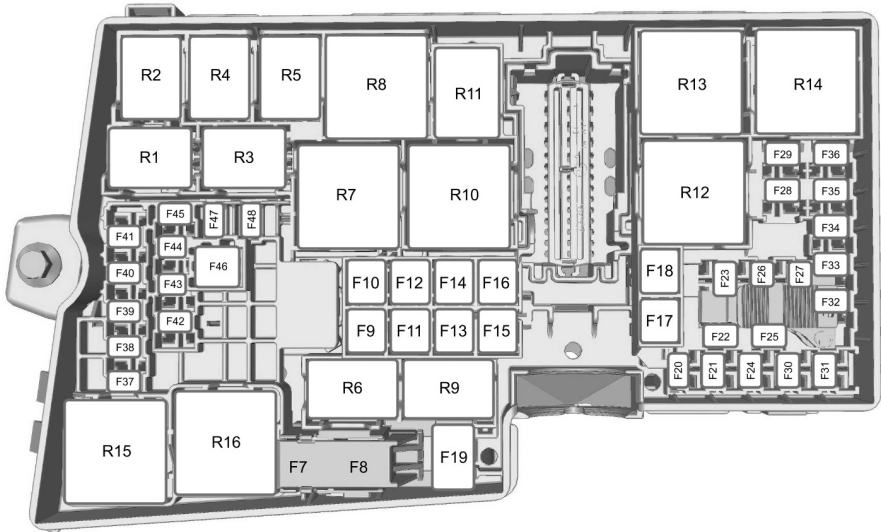
**Note:** A fuse puller is located in the engine compartment fuse box.



# Fuses

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

### Engine compartment fuse box



E129925

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
7	40	Anti-lock Braking System pump
8	30	Anti-lock Braking System valve
9	20	Headlamp washer
10	40	Heater blower
11	30	Voltage quality module
12	30	Engine Control Relay
13	30	Starter relay
14	40	Heated windshield (right-hand side)
15	25	Intercooler Fan - 1.0L EcoBoost



## Fuses

<b>Fuse</b>	<b>Ampere rating</b>	<b>Circuits protected</b>
16	40	Heated windshield (left-hand side)
17	20	Fuel operated heater
18	20	Windshield wipers
19	5	Anti-lock Braking System, electronic stability program module
20	15	Horn
21	5	Brake lamp switch
22	15	Battery monitoring system
23	5	Relay coils, lighting control switch module
24	20	Rear power outlet
25	10	Power exterior mirrors
26	15	Powertrain control module
27	15	Air conditioning clutch
28	-	Not used
29	25	Heated rear window
30	5	Powertrain control module
31	-	Not used
32	10	Exhaust gas recirculation valve, swirl control valves, heated exhaust gas oxygen sensor (engine management), electronic fan control module relay (coil), run on water pump module - 1.0L EcoBoost
33	10	Ignition Coils
34	10	Injectors
35	5	Intercooler relay coil
35	15	Filter heater (diesel engine)
36	10	Powertrain control module
37	-	Not used
38	15	Powertrain control module, transmission control module



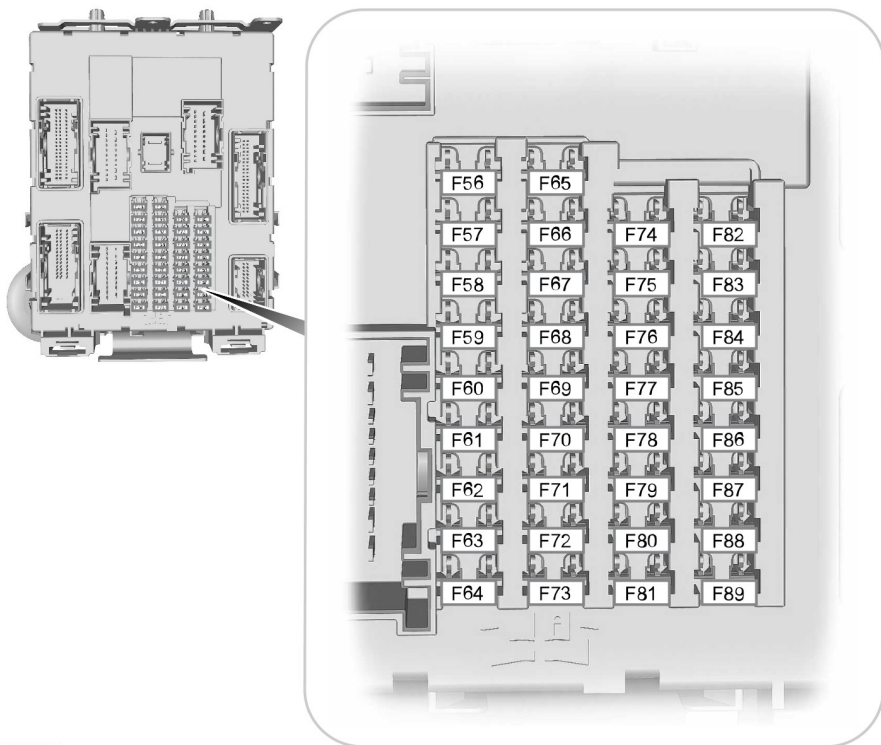
## Fuses

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
39	5	Headlamp control module
40	5	Electric power assisted steering
41	20	Body Control Module
42	15	Rear window wiper
43	15	Headlamp leveling
44	-	Not used
45	10	Heated washer jets
46	25	Power windows (front)
47	7.5	Heated exterior mirrors
48	15	Vapourizer



# Fuses

## Passenger compartment fuse box



E129926

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
56	20	Fuel pump supply
57	-	Not used
58	-	Not used
59	5	Passive anti-theft system supply
60	10	Interior lamp, driver's door switch pack, glove box



## Fuses

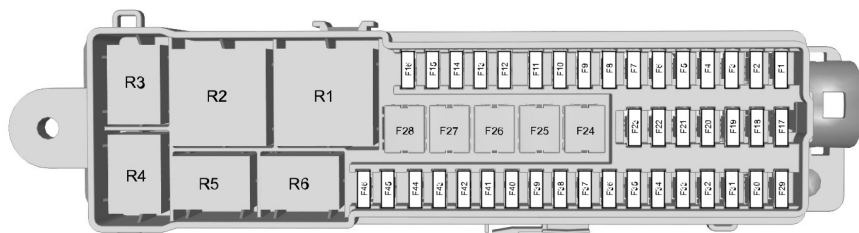
Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
61	20	Cigar lighter, second row power point
62	5	Rain sensor module, auto-dimming mirror
63	-	Not used
64	-	Not used
65	10	Liftgate release
66	20	Driver's door lock, double locking
67	7.5	Information and entertainment display
68	15	Steering column lock
69	5	Instrument cluster
70	20	Central locking
71	10	Air conditioning
72	7.5	Steering wheel control module
73	7.5	Alarm, on-board diagnostics II
74	15	High beam
75	15	Front fog lamps
76	10	Reversing lamp
77	20	Washer pump
78	5	Ignition switch or start button
79	15	Voice control module, radio, navigation system, DVD player, CD changer, door lock button
80	-	Not used
81	5	Interior motion sensor, radio frequency receiver, sun blinds.
82	20	Washer pump ground
83	20	Central locking ground
84	20	Driver's door lock and double locking ground



# Fuses

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
85	7.5	Radio, navigation system, passenger airbag deactivation switch, heated front seats switch, parking heater, manual air conditioning heater module
86	10	Restraint system
87	-	Not used
88	-	Not used
89	-	Not used

## Load compartment fuse box



E129927

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
1	-	Not used
2	10	Keyless vehicle module
3	5	Keyless vehicle door handles
4	25	Door module (left-hand front) (power windows, central locking, power folding exterior mirror, heated exterior mirror)
5	25	Door module (right-hand front) (power windows, central locking, power folding exterior mirror, heated exterior mirror)



## Fuses

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
6	25	Door module (left-hand rear) (power windows)
7	25	Door module (right-hand rear) (power windows)
8	10	Security Horn
9	25	Power driver's seat
10	-	Not used
11	-	Not used
12	10	Air conditioning module
13	5	Instrument cluster module
14	7.5	Information and entertainment display, GPS module (with start-stop module)
15	15	Audio unit, audio unit control panel module
16	-	Not used
17	-	Not used
18	-	Not used
19	-	Not used
20	-	Not used
21	-	Not used
22	-	Not used
23	-	Not used
24	30	Power inverter
25	25	Power operated tailgate
26	40	Accessories, trailer module
27	-	Not used
28	-	Not used
29	5	Blind spot monitor, lane keeping aid, active city stop, rear view camera (without start-stop module)
29	5	Extended ignition signal (with start-stop module)



## Fuses

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
30	5	Park aid Module
31	-	Not used
32	5	Power inverter
33	-	Not used
34	15	Heated driver's seat
35	15	Heated front passenger seat
36	-	Not used
37	20	Sun blind system
38	-	Not used
39	-	Not used
40	-	Not used
41	-	Not used
42	-	Not used
43	-	Not used
44	-	Not used
45	-	Not used
46	5	Blind spot monitor, lane keeping aid, rear view camera (with start-stop module)



# Vehicle recovery

## TOWING POINTS

### Towing eye location

The screw-in towing eye is located in the spare wheel well.

The towing eye must **always** be carried in the vehicle.

### Installing the towing eye

#### CAUTION

⚠ The screw-in towing eye has a **left-hand thread**. Turn it **counterclockwise** to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

**Note:** On vehicles with a tow bar, the towing eye cannot be installed at the rear of the vehicle. Use the tow bar to tow a vehicle.

### Front towing eye



E78367

### Rear towing eye



E78368

Insert a suitable object into the hole on the underside of the cover and prise off the cover.

Install the towing eye.

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

### All vehicles

#### WARNINGS



Switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. The steering lock will engage and the direction indicators and brake lamps will not work if you do not.






The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



# Vehicle recovery

---

## CAUTIONS






-  Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.
-  Select neutral when your vehicle is being towed.
-  In the event of a breakdown or mechanical failure **do not** use individual axle carriers. Your vehicle must be recovered with either **ALL** wheels on the ground or transported with **ALL** wheels lifted clear of the ground on a level platform.

---

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle that is towing.

## Vehicles with automatic transmission

### CAUTIONS

-  If a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph) and a distance of 20 kilometers (12 miles) is to be exceeded **ALL** wheels must be lifted clear of the ground.
-  It is recommended not to tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move the vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 20 km/h (12 mph) or further than 20 kilometers (12 miles).
-  Do not tow your vehicle backwards.
-  In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission **do not** use individual axle carriers. **ALL** wheels must be lifted clear of the ground on a level platform.
-  Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0°C (32°F).



# Maintenance

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford Authorized Repairers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

In addition to regular servicing, we recommend that you carry out the following additional checks.

### WARNINGS



Switch the ignition off before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.



Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage.



Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan. Under certain conditions, the fan may continue to run for several minutes after you have switched the engine off.

### CAUTION



When carrying out maintenance checks, make sure that filler caps are fitted securely.

## Daily checks

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

## Check when refueling

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 195).
- Brake fluid level. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 196).
- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 196).
- Tire pressures (when cold). See **Technical Specifications** (page 216).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 204).

## Monthly checks

- Engine coolant level (engine cold). See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 195).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Technical Specifications** (page 216).

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

### Opening the hood



E73698



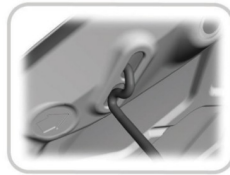
# Maintenance

---



E135852

Move the catch to the left.



E87786

Open the hood and support it with the strut.



## Closing the hood

### WARNING



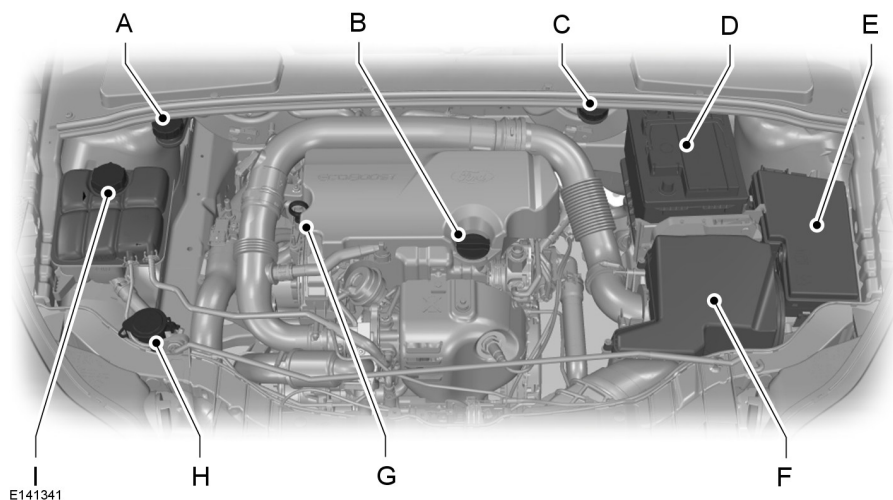
Make sure that the hood is closed properly.

Lower the hood and allow it to drop from under its own weight for the last 20 – 30 centimeters (8 - 11 inches).



# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



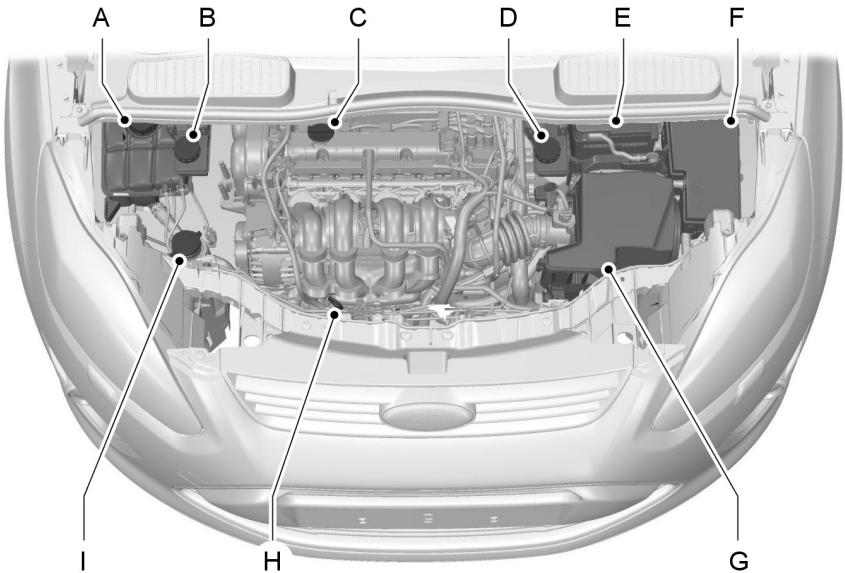
- A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 196).
- B Engine oil filler cap\*. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 195).
- C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 196).
- D Battery. See **Vehicle battery** (page 202).
- E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 177).
- F Air cleaner. No maintenance necessary.
- G Engine oil dipstick\*. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 195).
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 196).
- I Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 195).

\*The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.



# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.6L DURATEC-16V TI-VCT (SIGMA)



E130030

- A Engine coolant reservoir\*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 195).
- B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)\*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 196).
- C Engine oil filler cap\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 195).
- D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)\*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 196).
- E Battery: See **Vehicle battery** (page 202).
- F Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 177).
- G Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.



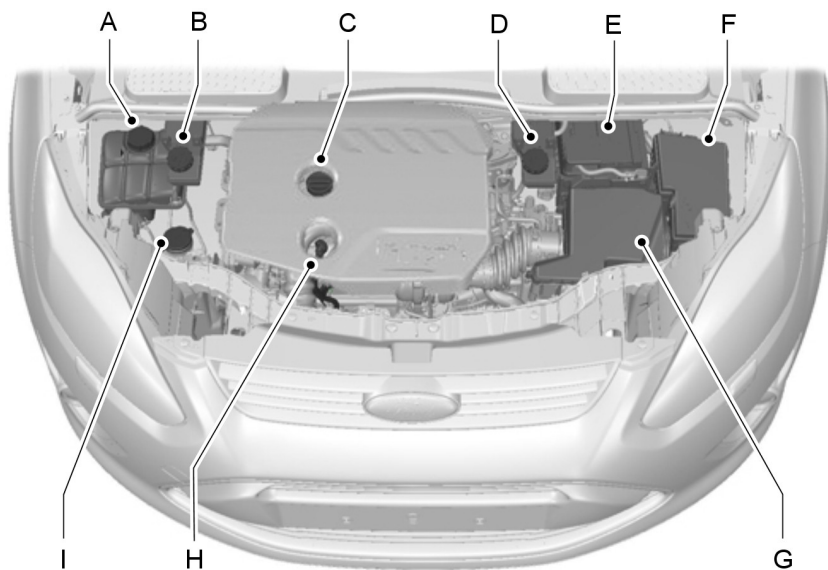
# Maintenance

H Engine oil dipstick\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 195).

I Windshield washer fluid reservoir\*: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 196).

\*For easy identification, filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are marked in color.

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.6L DURATORQ-TDCI (DV) DIESEL



E130031

A Engine coolant reservoir\*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 195).

B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)\*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 196).

C Engine oil filler cap\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 195).

D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)\*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 196).

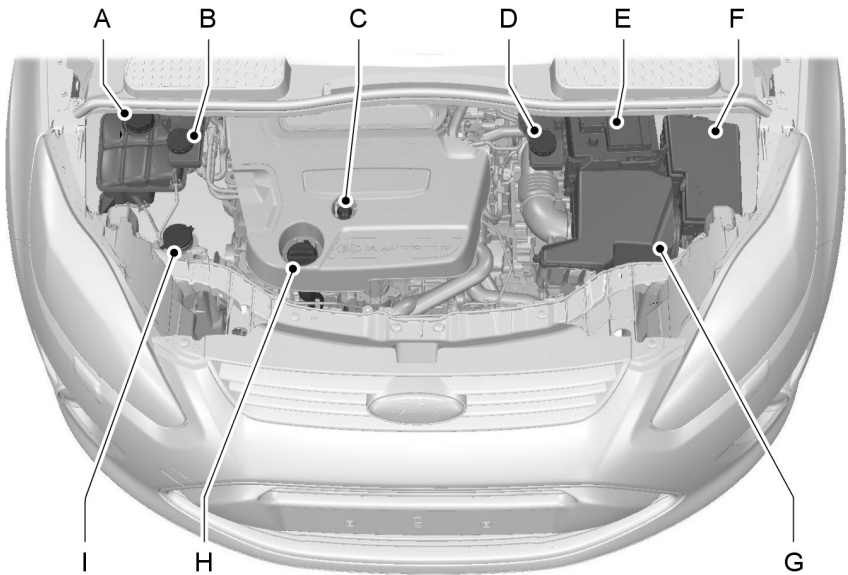


# Maintenance

- E Battery: See **Vehicle battery** (page 202).
- F Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 177).
- G Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.
- H Engine oil dipstick\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 195).
- I Windshield washer fluid reservoir\*: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 196).

\*For easy identification, filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are marked in color.

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL



E130032

- A Engine coolant reservoir\*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 195).
- B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)\*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 196).

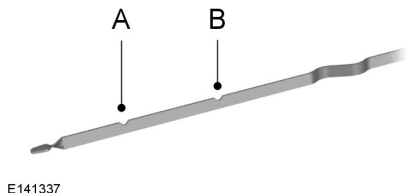


# Maintenance

- C Engine oil dipstick\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 195).
- D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)\*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 196).
- E Battery: See **Vehicle battery** (page 202).
- F Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 177).
- G Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.
- H Engine oil filler cap\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 195).
- I Windshield washer fluid reservoir\*: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 196).

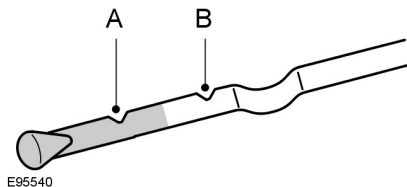
\*For easy identification, filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are marked in color.

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



A MIN  
B MAX

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.6L DURATEC-16V TI-VCT (SIGMA)

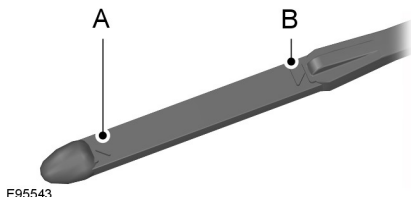


A MIN  
B MAX



# Maintenance

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.6L DURATORQ-TDCI (DV) DIESEL/2.0L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL



- A MIN  
B MAX

## ENGINE OIL CHECK

### CAUTION

! Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions, they could damage the engine.

**Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5000 kilometers (3000 miles).

### Checking the oil level

### CAUTION

! Make sure that the level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

**Note:** Check the level before starting the engine.

**Note:** Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.

**Note:** Oil expands when it is hot. The level may therefore extend a few millimeters beyond the **MAX** mark.

Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the level is at the **MIN** mark, top up immediately.

## Topping up

### WARNINGS



Only top up when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.



Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Remove the filler cap.

### WARNING



Do not top up further than the **MAX** mark.

**Note:** Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.

Top up with fluid that meets the Ford specification. See **Technical Specifications** (page 197).

Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

### Checking the coolant level

### WARNING



Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.

### CAUTION



Make sure that the level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.



# Maintenance

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may therefore extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

If the level is at the **MIN** mark, top up immediately.

## Topping up

### WARNINGS



Only top up when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.



Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.



Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is hot. Wait for the engine to cool down.



Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilt on a hot exhaust.

### CAUTIONS



In an emergency, you can add just water to the cooling system to reach a vehicle service station. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.



Prolonged use of incorrect dilution of the coolant can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Unscrew the cap **slowly**. Any pressure will escape slowly as you unscrew the cap.

### CAUTION



Do not top up further than the **MAX** mark.

Top up with a 50/50 mixture of coolant and water using fluid that meets the Ford specification. See **Technical Specifications** (page 197).

## BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID CHECK

### WARNINGS



Use of any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid may reduce brake efficiency and not meet Ford's performance standards.



Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.



If the level is at the **MIN** mark, have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

**Note:** Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.

**Note:** The brake and the clutch systems are supplied from the same reservoir.

Top up with fluid that meets the Ford specification. See **Technical Specifications** (page 197).

## WASHER FLUID CHECK

**Note:** The front and rear washer systems are supplied from the same reservoir.

When topping up, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. We recommend that you use only high quality washer fluid.

For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions.




# Maintenance

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Vehicle fluids

#### CAUTION

 Do not use fluids which do not meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of unsuitable fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your Warranty.

Item	Specification	Viscosity Grade	Recommended fluid
Engine oil - gasoline engines only	WSS-M2C948-B	5W-20	Castrol or Ford Engine Oil
Alternative engine oil - all gasoline engines except 1.0L EcoBoost	WSS-M2C913-C	5W-30	Castrol or Ford Engine Oil
Engine oil - diesel engines	WSS-M2C913-C	5W-30	Castrol or Ford Engine Oil
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B44-D	-	Motorcraft SuperPlus Anti-freeze
Brake fluid	WSS-M6C65-A2	-	Motorcraft or Ford DOT 4 LV High Performance Brake Fluid

Your engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit whilst maintaining the durability of your engine.

**Topping up the oil:** If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by **WSS-M2C913-C** or **WSS-M2C948-B** (gasoline engines only), you must use **SAE 5W-30** that meets the specification defined by **ACEA A5/B5**.

Using topping up oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.

Castrol engine oil recommended.





# Maintenance

## Capacities

Variant	Item	Capacity in Liters (gallons)
All - Grand C-MAX	Fuel tank	60 (13.2)
Vehicles with a gasoline engine - C-MAX	Fuel tank	55 (12.1)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi, C-MAX	Fuel tank	53 (11.7)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW, C-MAX	Fuel tank	60 (13.2)
All	Windshield washer system - with headlamp washers	4.5 (1)
All	Windshield washer system - without headlamp washers	3 (0.7)
1.0L EcoBoost	Engine oil - with filter	4.1 (0.9)
1.0L EcoBoost	Engine oil - without filter	4 (0.9)
1.0L EcoBoost	Cooling system	approx. 6.3 (1.4)
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma	Engine oil - with filter	4.1 (0.9)
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma	Engine oil - without filter	3.75 (0.8)
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma	Cooling system	approx. 5.8 (1.3)
1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma	Engine oil - with filter	4.1 (0.9)
1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma	Engine oil - without filter	3.75 (0.8)
1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma	Cooling system	approx. 6.3 (1.4)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	Engine oil - with filter	3.8 (0.8)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	Engine oil - without filter	3.5 (0.8)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	Cooling system	approx. 7.3 (1.6)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	Engine oil - with filter	5.7 (1.3)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	Engine oil - without filter	5.4 (1.2)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	Cooling system	approx. 8.5 (1.9)



# Maintenance

---

## Engine oil top up capacities

Engine	Capacity in liters (gallons)
1.0L EcoBoost	0.8 (0.2)
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma	0.7 (0.2)
1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma	0.8 (0.2)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	1.6 (0.4)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	1.8 (0.4)



# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

### WARNING



If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield.

### CAUTIONS



Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.



Some car wash installations use water at high pressure. This could damage certain parts of your vehicle.



Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.



Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

## Cleaning the headlamps

### CAUTIONS



Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.



Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.

## Cleaning the rear window

### CAUTION



Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

## Cleaning the chrome trim

### CAUTION



Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.

## Cleaning the alloy wheels

**Note:** Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

**Note:** Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period time.

**Note:** Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.

**Note:** If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

**Note:** Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.






# Vehicle Care

---

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

## Body paintwork preservation

### CAUTIONS

-  Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.
-  Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.
-  Do not apply polish to the windshield or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.



---

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### Safety belts

#### WARNINGS


-  Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.
-  Do not allow moisture to penetrate the safety belt retractor mechanism.

---

Clean the safety belts with interior cleaner or water applied with a soft sponge. Let the safety belts dry naturally, away from artificial heat.



### Instrument cluster screens, LCD screens, radio screens

#### WARNING

-  Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.
- 


## Rear windows

### CAUTIONS

-  Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.
  -  Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.
- 

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

### CAUTION

-  Remove apparently harmless looking substances from the paintwork immediately (e.g. bird droppings, tree resins, insect remains, tar spots, road salt and industrial fall out).
- 

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products is available from your Ford Dealer. Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.



# Vehicle battery

## JUMP-STARTING THE VEHICLE

### WARNING



Do not use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or the intake manifold as grounding points.

### CAUTIONS



Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

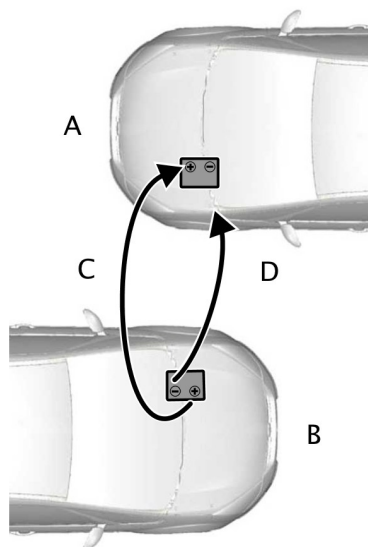


Always use booster cables with insulated clamps and adequate size cable.



Do not disconnect the battery from the vehicle's electrical system.

## To connect the booster cables



E102925

- A Flat battery vehicle
- B Booster battery vehicle
- C Positive connection cable
- D Negative connection cable

1. Position the vehicles so that they do not touch one another.
2. Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.
3. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle **B** with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle **A** (cable **C**).
4. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle **B** to the ground connection of vehicle **A** (cable **D**). See **Battery connection points** (page 203).



# Vehicle battery

## CAUTIONS

- ❗ **Do not connect to the negative (–) terminal of the flat battery.**
- ❗ Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

## To start the engine

1. Run the engine of vehicle **B** at moderately high speed.
2. Start the engine of vehicle **A**.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.

## CAUTION

- ❗ Do not switch on the headlamps when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

## CAUTION

- ❗ For vehicles with Start-stop the battery requirement is different. It must be replaced by one of exactly the same specification as the original.

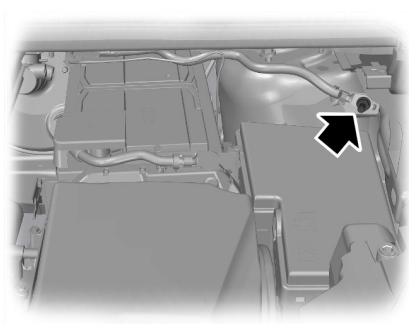
**Note:** Where applicable, the audio system must be reprogrammed with the keycode.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 188).

## BATTERY CONNECTION POINTS

## CAUTION

- ❗ **Do not connect to the negative (–) terminal of the flat battery.**



E130431




The ground connection point is located to the right of the battery near the engine compartment fuse box.



# Wheels and Tires

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### CAUTIONS

-  Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage the vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.
-  If you change the diameter of the tires from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take the vehicle to your dealer to have the engine management system reprogrammed.
-  If you intend to change the size of the wheels from that fitted at the factory, check the suitability with your dealer.

**Note:** Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.

A decal with tire pressure data is located in the driver's door opening at the B-pillar.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive the vehicle and when the tires are cold.

## CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

### Locking lug nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from your dealer using the reference number certificate.





### Vehicles with a spare wheel

If the spare wheel is exactly the same type and size as the other fitted road wheels, you can replace the existing road wheel with the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.


If the spare wheel is different to the other road wheels, it will carry a yellow label with the appropriate speed limit.

Refer to the following information before changing the road wheel.

### WARNINGS

-  Drive the shortest possible distances.
-  Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.
-  Do not carry out any tire repairs on a spare wheel.
-  Do not drive through an automatic car wash.
-  If you are unsure what type of spare wheel you have do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
-  Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Technical Specifications** (page 216).




### CAUTION

-  The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced. Take care when parking next to a curb.

**Note:** Your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

### Vehicle jack

### WARNINGS

-  The vehicle jack supplied with your vehicle should only be used when changing a wheel in emergency situations.
-  Before using the vehicle jack, check that it is not damaged or deformed and that the thread is lubricated and free from foreign matter.
-  Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or the jack and the vehicle.



# Wheels and Tires

**Note:** Vehicles with a tire repair kit are not equipped with a vehicle jack or a wheel brace.

It is recommended to use a workshop type hydraulic jack for changing between summer and winter tires.


**Note:** Use a jack with a minimum lifting capacity of 1.5 tonnes and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of 80 millimeters (3.1 inches).

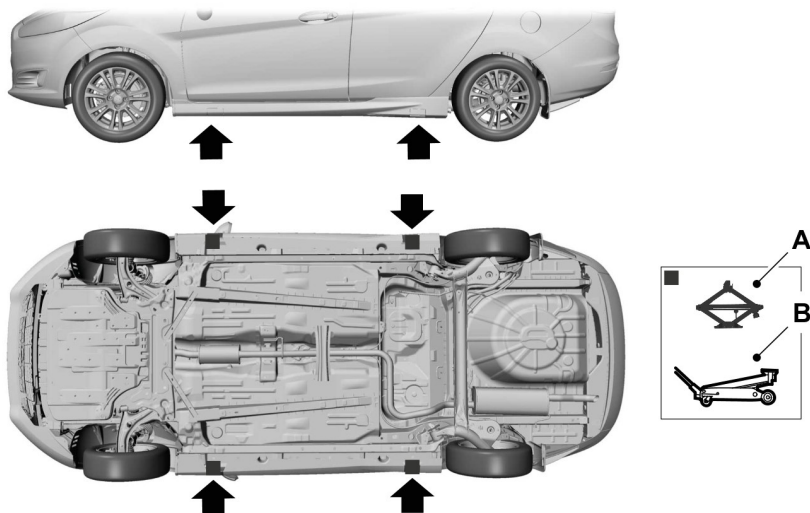
## Vehicles without tire repair kit

Your vehicle jack, wheel brace, screw-in towing eye and wheel trim remover are located in the spare wheel well.

## Jacking and lifting points

### CAUTION

 Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.

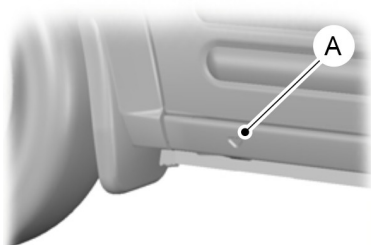


E92658

- A Emergency use only
- B Maintenance



# Wheels and Tires

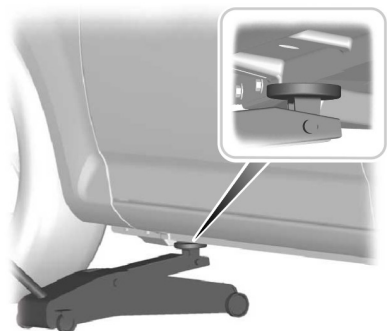


E93302

Small arrow-shaped marks on the sills **A** show the location of the jacking points.



E92932



E93020

## Assembling the wheel brace

### Type one

#### WARNING



When returning the wheel brace extension to its original position, take care not to get your fingers caught.

**Note:** Make sure that the wheel brace is fully extended.



E122546

Extend the wheel brace.

### Type two

#### CAUTION



The screw-in towing eye has a **left-hand thread**. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.



E122502

Insert the screw-in towing eye into the wheel brace.



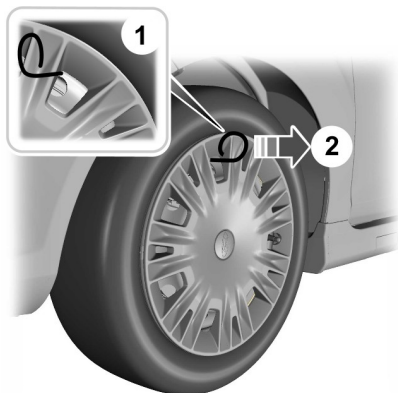
# Wheels and Tires

## Removing the wheel trim

### Type one

Insert the flat end of the wheel brace between the rim and the trim and carefully remove the trim.

### Type two







E122314

1. Insert the wheel trim remover.
2. Remove the wheel trim.







**Note:** Make sure that you pull the wheel trim remover at right angles to the trim.

## Removing a road wheel


### WARNINGS

-  Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.
-  Set up a warning triangle.
-  Make sure that the vehicle is on firm, level ground with the wheels pointing straight ahead.
-  Switch off the ignition and apply the parking brake.

### WARNINGS

-  If your vehicle has a manual transmission, select first or reverse gear. If it has an automatic transmission, select park.
-  Have the passengers leave the vehicle.
-  Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.
-  Make sure that the arrows on directional tires point in the direction of rotation when the vehicle is moving forwards. If you have to fit a spare wheel with the arrows pointing in the opposite direction, have the tire refitted in the correct direction by a properly trained technician.
-  Do not work underneath the vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.
-  Make sure that the jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

### CAUTION

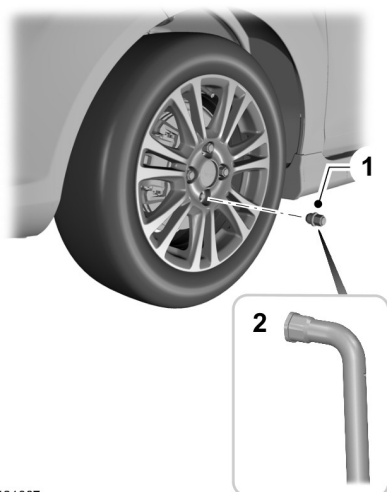
-  Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint.

**Note:** The spare wheel is located under the floor cover in the luggage compartment.

1. Install the locking lug nut key.



# Wheels and Tires




E121887

2. Slacken the lug nuts.
3. Jack up the vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the lug nuts and the wheel.


## Installing a road wheel

### WARNINGS

 Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage the vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid. See **Technical Specifications** (page 216).

 Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. Please contact your dealer for more details regarding compatibility.

### CAUTION

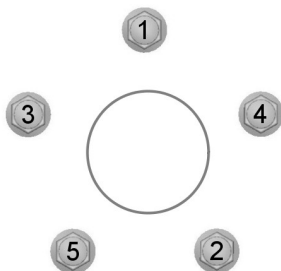
 Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

**Note:** The lug nuts of alloy wheels and spoked steel wheels can also be used for the steel spare wheel for a short time (maximum two weeks).

**Note:** Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.

**Note:** Make sure that the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.


1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts finger tight.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.



E75442

4. Partially tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack.
6. Fully tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 216).
7. Install the wheel trim using the ball of your hand.

### WARNING

 Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.



# Wheels and Tires

## TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT

Your vehicle may not have a spare tire. Therefore you will have an emergency kit which will only repair one flat tire.

The kit is located in the spare wheel well.

### General information

#### WARNINGS



Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all.

Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated.



Do not use the kit on run flat tires.



Do not try to seal damage to the tire's sidewall.

The kit seals most tire punctures [with a diameter of up to six millimeters (1/4 inch)] to temporarily restore mobility.

Observe the following rules when using the kit:

- Drive with caution and avoid making sudden steering or driving maneuvers, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer.
- The kit will provide you with an emergency temporary repair, enabling you to continue your journey to the next vehicle or tire dealer, or to drive a maximum distance of 200 kilometers (125 miles).
- Do not exceed a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

- Keep the kit out of the reach of children.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-40^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) and  $+70^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $+158^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).

### Using the kit

#### WARNINGS



Compressed air can act as an explosive or propellant.



Never leave the kit unattended while in use.

#### CAUTION



Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes.

**Note:** Use the kit only for the vehicle with which it was supplied.

- Park your vehicle at the roadside so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic and so that you are able to use the kit without being in danger.
- Apply the parking brake, even if you have parked on a level road, to make sure that the vehicle will not move.
- Do not attempt to remove foreign objects like nails or screws penetrating the tire.
- Leave the engine running while the kit is in use, but not if your vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated area (for example, inside a building). In these circumstances, switch the compressor on with the engine turned off.





# Wheels and Tires


- You must replace the sealant bottle with a new one before the expiry date (see top of bottle).
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that the tire has been temporarily sealed with the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions to be observed.


## Inflating the tire


### WARNINGS


 Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire.

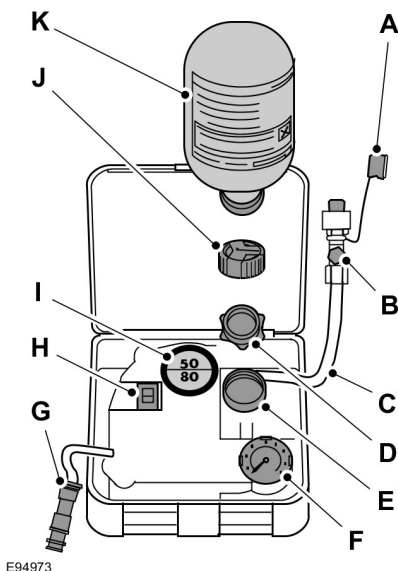
 Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is pumping.

 Watch the sidewall of the tire. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appear, turn off the compressor and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve B. Do not continue driving with this tire.

 The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin and clothing. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water. Consult a physician if you experience an adverse reaction.

 If the tire inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within 10 minutes, the tire may have suffered excessive damage, making a temporary repair impossible. In this case, do not continue driving with this tire.

 Screwing the bottle onto the bottle holder will pierce the seal of the bottle. Do not unscrew the bottle from the holder as the sealant will escape.



E94973

- A Protective cap
- B Pressure relief valve
- C Hose
- D Orange cap
- E Bottle holder
- F Pressure gauge
- G Power plug with cable
- H Compressor switch
- I Label
- J Bottle lid
- K Sealant bottle

1. Open the lid of the tire repair kit.



# Wheels and Tires

2. Peel off the label I showing the maximum permissible speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) from the casing and attach it to the instrument panel in the driver's field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
3. Take the hose C and the power plug with cable G out of the kit.
4. Unscrew the orange cap D and the bottle lid J.
5. Screw the sealant bottle K clockwise into the bottle holder E fully tight.
6. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tire.
7. Detach the protective cap A from the hose C and screw the hose C firmly onto the valve of the damaged tire.
8. Make sure that the compressor switch H is in position O.
9. Insert the power plug G into the cigar lighter socket or auxiliary power socket. See **Cigar Lighter** (page 118). See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 119).
10. Start the engine.
11. Move the compressor switch H to position 1.
12. Inflate the tire for no longer than 10 minutes to an inflation pressure of minimum 1.8 bar (26 psi) and a maximum of 3.5 bar (51 psi). Move the compressor switch H to position O and check the current tire pressure with pressure gauge F.

**Note:** When pumping in the sealant through the tire valve, the pressure may rise up to 6 bar (87 psi) but will drop again after about 30 seconds.

**Note:** After you have switched the compressor off, you may hear air escaping from the damaged tire. This is normal and can be ignored provided that the specified minimum tire pressure has been reached.

13. Remove the power plug G from the cigar lighter socket or auxiliary power socket.
14. Quickly unscrew the hose C from the tire valve and replace the protective cap A. Fasten the valve cap again.

**Note:** Some residual sealant fluid may drip or spray out of hose C while you are disconnecting it. This is normal.

15. Leave the sealant bottle K in the bottle holder E.
16. Make sure the kit, the bottle lid and the orange cap are stored safely, but still easily accessible in the vehicle. The kit will be required again when you check the tire pressure.
17. Immediately drive approximately three kilometers (two miles) so that the sealant can seal the damaged area.

## WARNING



If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed and drive with caution to a place where it is safe for you to stop the vehicle. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than 1.3 bar (19 psi) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire.

## Checking the tire pressure

1. Stop the vehicle after driving approximately three kilometers (two miles). Check, and where necessary, adjust the pressure of the damaged tire.
2. Attach the kit and read the tire pressure from the pressure gauge F.



# Wheels and Tires

3. If the pressure of the sealant-filled tire is 1.3 bar (19 psi) or more, adjust it to the specified pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 216).
4. Follow the inflation procedure once again to top up the tire.
5. Check the tire pressure again from the pressure gauge F. If the tire pressure is too high, deflate the tire to the specified pressure using the pressure relief valve B.
6. Once you have inflated the tire to its correct tire pressure, move the compressor switch H to position 0, remove the power plug G from the socket, unscrew the hose C, fasten the valve cap and replace the protective cap A.
7. Leave the sealant bottle K in the bottle holder E and store the kit away safely in its original location.
8. Drive to the nearest tire specialist to get the damaged tire replaced. Before the tire is removed from the rim, inform your tire dealer that the tire contains sealant. You must renew the sealant bottle K and hose C as soon as possible once used.

**Note:** Remember that this kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair after usage of tire repair kit may differ from country to country. You should consult a tire specialist for advice.

## WARNING



Before driving, make sure the tire is adjusted to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 216). Monitor the tire pressure until the sealed tire is replaced.

Empty sealant bottles can be disposed of together with normal household waste. Return remains of sealant to your dealer or dispose of it in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

## TIRE CARE



E70415

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals of between 5000 and 10000 kilometers (3000 and 6000 miles).

## CAUTION



Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.


Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.



# Wheels and Tires

## USING WINTER TIRES




### CAUTION

-  Make sure that you use the correct lug nuts for the type of wheel the winter tires are fitted to.


If winter tires are used, make sure that the tire pressures are correct. See **Technical Specifications** (page 216).

## USING SNOW CHAINS

### WARNINGS

-  Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph).
-  Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.
-  Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Technical Specifications** (page 216).

### CAUTION

-  If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

**Note:** *The ABS will continue to operate normally.*

Only use snow chains of 10 millimeter or smaller.


Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

### Vehicles with stability control (ESP)

Vehicles with stability control (ESP) may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics which can be reduced by switching traction control off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 141).

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

### WARNING

-  The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should check the tire pressure periodically using a tire gauge, see **When Inflating the Tires** in this chapter. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



You must check the tire pressures (including the spare tire where applicable) every two weeks when the tires are cold. You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure. The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).

As a driver assistance feature, your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system. A warning lamp will illuminate when one or more of the tires are significantly under-inflated. If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates, you should stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, check the tires and inflate them to the correct pressure.

Driving on under-inflated tires can:

- Cause them to overheat.
- Lead to tire failure.
- Reduce fuel efficiency.
- Reduce tire life.
- Affect vehicle handling or stopping ability.



# Wheels and Tires

The system is not a substitute for correct tire maintenance. You must maintain the correct tire pressures, even if low tire pressure has not illuminated the warning lamp.

Your vehicle has a system malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating correctly. The malfunction indicator and low tire pressure warning lamp have a combined function. When the system detects a malfunction, the warning lamp will flash for approximately one minute and then remain illuminated. This sequence will occur every time you switch the ignition on while the malfunction remains. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressures. A malfunction may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of a replacement tire or wheel that prevents the system from functioning correctly. Always check the tire pressure monitoring system malfunction warning after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle. Make sure the replacement tires or wheels allow the system to continue to function correctly.

## Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



E142549

**Note:** Each road wheel and tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor attaches to the valve stem. The tire covers the pressure sensor and it is not visible unless you remove the tire. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

You should always have tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

## Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The system measures the pressure in the four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning lamp will illuminate if any of the tire pressures are significantly low. If the warning lamp is on you must inflate one or more of the tires to the correct pressure.

## When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

If you need to replace a road wheel and tire with the temporary spare wheel, the system will continue to identify a defect. This is to remind you to repair and refit the damaged road wheel and tire to your vehicle.

To restore the correct operation of the system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle. For additional information, see **Changing Tires with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System** in this section.



# Wheels and Tires

## When You Believe the System is Not Operating Correctly

The main function of the system is to warn you when the tire pressures are low. It can

also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of operating correctly. See the following chart for information concerning the system:

Low tire pressure warning lamp	Possible cause	Action required
Solid warning lamp	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Make sure tires are at the correct pressure. See <b>When Inflating the Tires</b> in this chapter.  2. After inflating the tires to the correct pressure you must carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and refit it to your vehicle to restore correct system function. For a description on how the system functions, see <b>When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed</b> in this section.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning lamp	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and refit it to your vehicle to restore correct system function. For a description on how the system functions, see <b>When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed</b> in this section.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.



# Wheels and Tires

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

### Overview

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle requires different tire pressures in the front tires compared to the rear tires. The system will illuminate the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

The tires need to be periodically rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the system needs to know when the tires have been rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and rear axles. With this information, the system can detect and correctly warn of low tire pressures.

### Carrying Out the System Reset Procedure

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Using the information display control, navigate to **Menu, Vehicle settings, Driver assist, Tyre Monitor**.
3. Press and hold the **OK** button until confirmation appears.

Alternatively, if your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until confirmation appears.

### How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures

While driving in a normal manner, tire pressures may increase up to 0.3 bar (4 psi) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight and the temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, tire pressures may decrease up to 0.2 bar (3 psi) for a drop of 17°C (30°F) in ambient temperature. The system detects this lower pressure value as being significantly lower than the correct inflation pressure, and the warning lamp illuminates.

### When Inflating the Tires

When inflating the tires the system may not respond immediately to the air added to the tires.

### If the warning lamp is on:

1. Check each tire to verify that none are flat.
2. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.
3. Check the tire pressures and inflate all the tires to the correct pressure.
4. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure.

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Lug nut torque

Wheel type	Nm (lb-ft)
All	135 (100)



# Wheels and Tires

## Tire pressures (cold tires)

### Up to 80 km/h (50 mph)

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )	bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )	bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )	bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )
All	T125/80 R 16	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)
All	T125/90 R 16	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)

## C-MAX

### Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma, 1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma	205/55 R 16*	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi, 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	205/55 R 16*	2.3 (33)	2.1 (31)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma, 1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma	215/55 R 16*	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi, 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	215/55 R 16*	2.3 (33)	2.1 (31)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma, 1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma	215/50 R 17	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	215/50 R 17	2.3 (33)	2.1 (31)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)



## Wheels and Tires

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	215/50 R 17	2.4 (35)	2.1 (31)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma, 1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma, 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	235/40 R 18	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.6 (38)	2.9 (42)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	235/40 R 18	2.4 (35)	2.1 (31)	2.6 (38)	2.9 (42)

\*Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

### Continuous speed in excess of 160 km/h (100 mph)

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma	205/55 R 16	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma	205/55 R 16	2.3 (33)	2.1 (31)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	205/55 R 16	2.3 (33)	2.1 (31)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma, 1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma	215/55 R 16	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi, 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	215/55 R 16	2.4 (35)	2.1 (31)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma, 1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma	215/50 R 17	2.2 (32)	2.1 (31)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)



## Wheels and Tires

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	215/50 R 17	2.3 (33)	2.1 (31)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	215/50 R 17	2.4 (35)	2.1 (31)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma, 1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma	235/40 R 18	2.2 (32)	2.1 (31)	2.6 (38)	2.9 (42)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	235/40 R 18	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.6 (38)	2.9 (42)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	235/40 R 18	2.4 (35)	2.1 (31)	2.6 (38)	2.9 (42)

### Grand C-MAX

Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma	205/55 R 16*	2.1 (31)	2.3 (33)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma	215/55 R 16*	2.1 (31)	2.3 (33)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi, 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	215/55 R 16*	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma	215/50 R 17	2.1 (31)	2.3 (33)	2.5 (36)	2.9 (42)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	215/50 R 17	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.5 (36)	2.9 (42)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	215/50 R 17	2.4 (35)	2.3 (33)	2.5 (36)	2.9 (42)



## Wheels and Tires

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma, 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	235/40 R 18	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.6 (38)	2.9 (42)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	235/40 R 18	2.4 (35)	2.1 (31)	2.6 (38)	2.9 (42)

\*Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

### Continuous speed in excess of 160 km/h (100 mph)

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT - Sigma	205/55 R 16	2.2 (32)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)	3 (44)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma	215/55 R 16	2.2 (32)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)	3 (44)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi, 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	215/55 R 16	2.4 (35)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)	3 (44)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma	215/50 R 17	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.7 (39)	3.1 (45)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	215/50 R 17	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.7 (39)	3.1 (45)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	215/50 R 17	2.5 (36)	2.3 (33)	2.7 (39)	3.1 (45)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L EcoBoost - Sigma	235/40 R 18	2.3 (33)	2.1 (31)	2.7 (39)	3.2 (46)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	235/40 R 18	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.7 (39)	3.2 (46)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	235/40 R 18	2.5 (36)	2.1 (31)	2.7 (39)	3.2 (46)

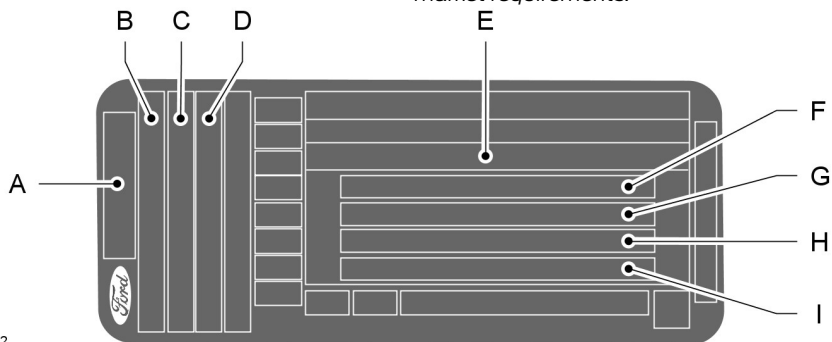


# Vehicle Identification

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

**Note:** The vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.

**Note:** The information shown on the vehicle identification plate is dependant upon market requirements.



E135662

- A Model
- B Variant
- C Engine designation
- D Emission level
- E Vehicle identification number
- F Gross vehicle weight
- G Gross train weight
- H Maximum front axle weight
- I Maximum rear axle weight

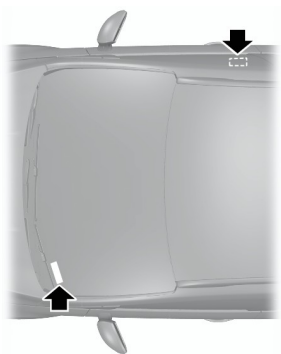
The vehicle identification number and maximum weights are shown on a plate located on the lock side of the right-hand door aperture at the bottom.



# Vehicle identification

---

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



E87496

The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the front seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



# Capacities and Specifications

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Vehicle dimensions

#### C-MAX

Dimension description	Dimension in mm (inches)
Maximum length	4380 (172.4)
Overall width including exterior mirrors	2067 (81.4)
Overall height - EC curb weight	1595 - 1626 (62.8 - 64)
Wheelbase	2648 (104.2)
Front track	1544 - 1559 (60.8 - 61.4)
Rear track	1554 - 1569 (61.2 - 61.8)

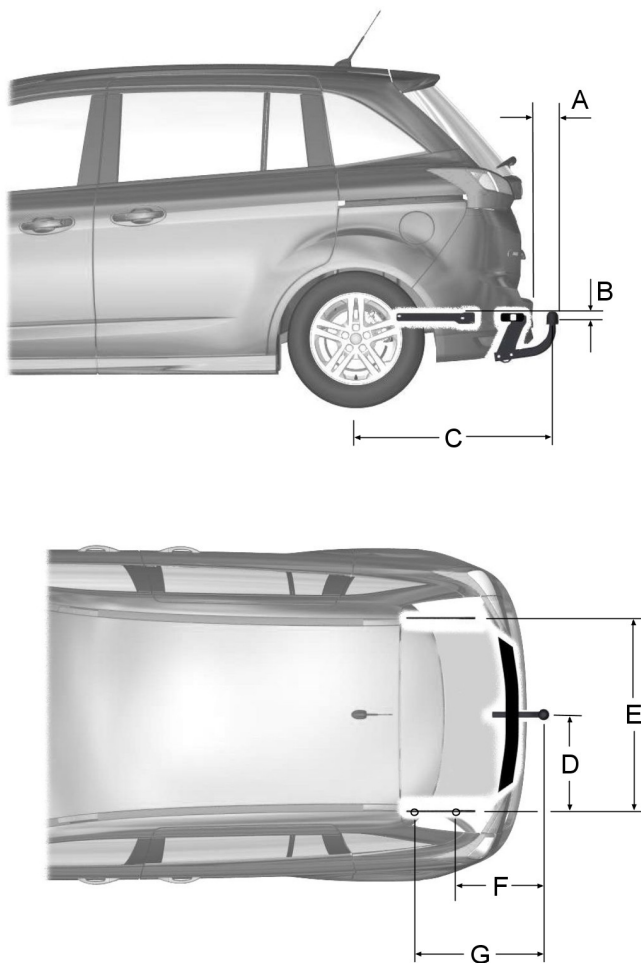
#### Grand C-MAX

Dimension description	Dimension in mm (inches)
Maximum length	4520 (177.9)
Overall width including exterior mirrors	2067 (81.4)
Overall height - EC curb weight without roof bars	1653 - 1684 (65 - 66.3)
Overall height - EC curb weight including roof bars	1667 - 1698 (65.6 - 66.8)
Wheelbase	2788 (109.8)
Front track	1544 - 1559 (60.8 - 61.4)
Rear track	1554 - 1569 (61.2 - 61.8)



# Capacities and Specifications

## Towing equipment dimensions



E130084



## Capacities and Specifications

Item	Dimension description	Dimension in mm (inches)
A	Bumper – end of tow ball	111 (4.4)
B	Attachment point – center of tow ball (C-MAX)	4 (0.1)
B	Attachment point – center of tow ball (Grand C-MAX)	5 (0.2)
C	Wheel center – center of tow ball	925 (36.4)
D	Center of tow ball – side member	518 (20.4)
E	Distance between side members	1036 (40.8)
F	Center of tow ball – center 1. attachment point	426 (16.8)
G	Center of tow ball – center 2. attachment point	726 (28.6)



# Audio introduction

## IMPORTANT AUDIO INFORMATION

### WARNINGS



Due to technical incompatibility, recordable (CD-R) and rewritable (CD-RW) discs may not function correctly.



These CD radio units will play compact discs that conform to the International Red Book standard audio specification. Copy protected CDs from some manufacturers do not conform to this standard and playback cannot be guaranteed.



Dual format, dual sided discs (DVD Plus, CD-DVD format), adopted by the music industry, are thicker than normal CDs and consequently playback cannot be guaranteed, and jamming could occur. Irregular shaped CDs and CDs with a scratch protection film or self adhesive labels attached should not be used. Warranty claims, where this type of disc is found to be inside an audio unit returned for repair, will not be accepted.



All CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 12 cm audio compact discs only.



The audio unit may be damaged if unsuitable items like credit cards or coins are pushed inside the CD aperture.

CAUTION—INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN  
DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM OR  
VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS

## Disc labels

### Audio CD



### MP3



## Audio unit labels

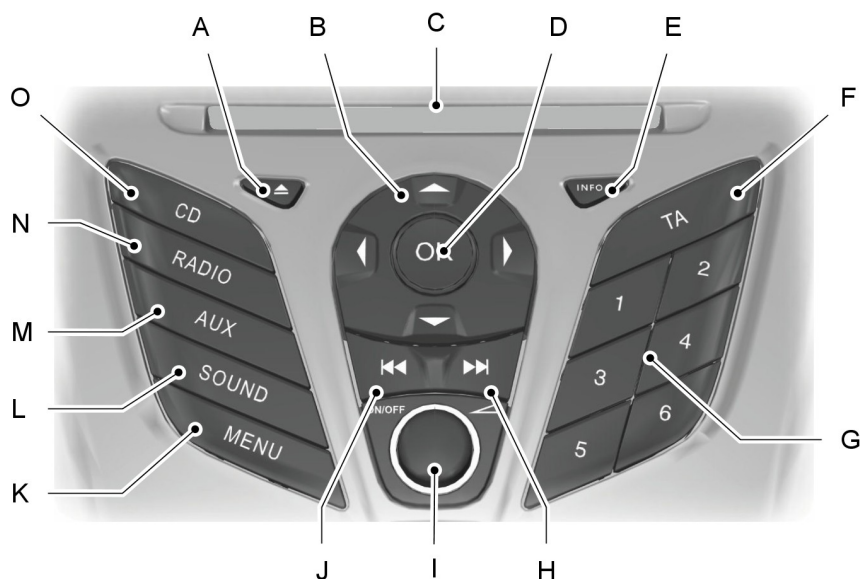
CLASS 1  
LASER PRODUCT



## Audio unit overview

**Note:** Units have an integrated multi function display situated above the CD aperture. This shows important information regarding control of your audio unit. Additionally, there are various icons placed around the display screen which light up when a function is active (for example CD, Radio or Aux.)

### Type 1



E130324

- A **Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 241).
- B **Cursor arrows:** Press a button to scroll through on-screen choices.
- C **CD slot:** Where you insert a CD. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 241).
- D **OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.
- E **INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB and iPod information.



## Audio unit overview

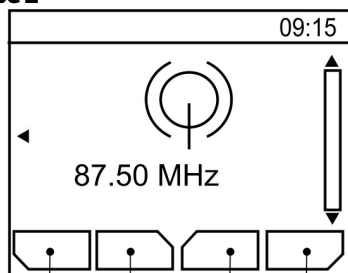
---

- F **TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement. See **Traffic information control** (page 237).
- G **Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns. See **Station preset buttons** (page 237).
- H **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD. See **Station tuning control** (page 236). See **Track selection** (page 241).
- I **On, Off and Volume:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off. Turn the dial to adjust the volume.
- J **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD. See **Station tuning control** (page 236). See **Track selection** (page 241).
- K **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features.
- L **SOUND:** Press the button to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, middle, balance and fade. See **Sound button** (page 236).
- M **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Auxiliary Input Jack** (page 121). See **Auxiliary input jack** (page 244).
- N **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Audio unit operation** (page 236).
- O **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 241).



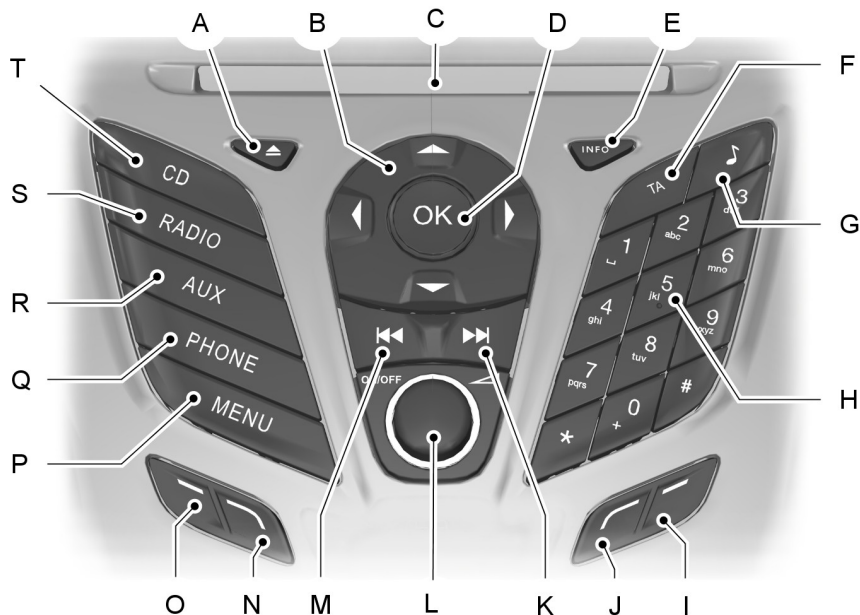
# Audio unit overview

## Type 2



A Descriptions for function buttons  
1-4

E104157



E130142



## Audio unit overview

---

- A **Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 241).
- B **Cursor arrows:** Press a button to scroll through on-screen choices.
- C **CD slot:** Where you insert a CD. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 241).
- D **OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.
- E **INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB and iPod information.
- F **TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement. See **Traffic information control** (page 237).
- G **Sound:** Press the button to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, middle, balance and fade. See **Sound button** (page 236).
- H **Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns. See **Station preset buttons** (page 237).
- I **Function button 4:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- J **Function button 3:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- K **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD. See **Station tuning control** (page 236). See **Track selection** (page 241).
- L **On, Off and Volume:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off. Turn the dial to adjust the volume.
- M **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD. See **Station tuning control** (page 236). See **Track selection** (page 241).
- N **Function button 2:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- O **Function button 1:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- P **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features.
- Q **PHONE:** Press the button to access the phone feature of the SYNC system by pressing **PHONE** then **MENU**. See separate manual.
- R **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Auxiliary Input Jack** (page 121). See **Auxiliary input jack** (page 244).

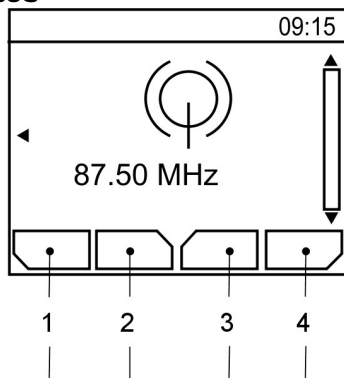


## Audio unit overview

- S **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Audio unit operation** (page 236).
- T **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 241).

Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. Descriptions for the functions are shown at the bottom of the screen display.

**Type 3**

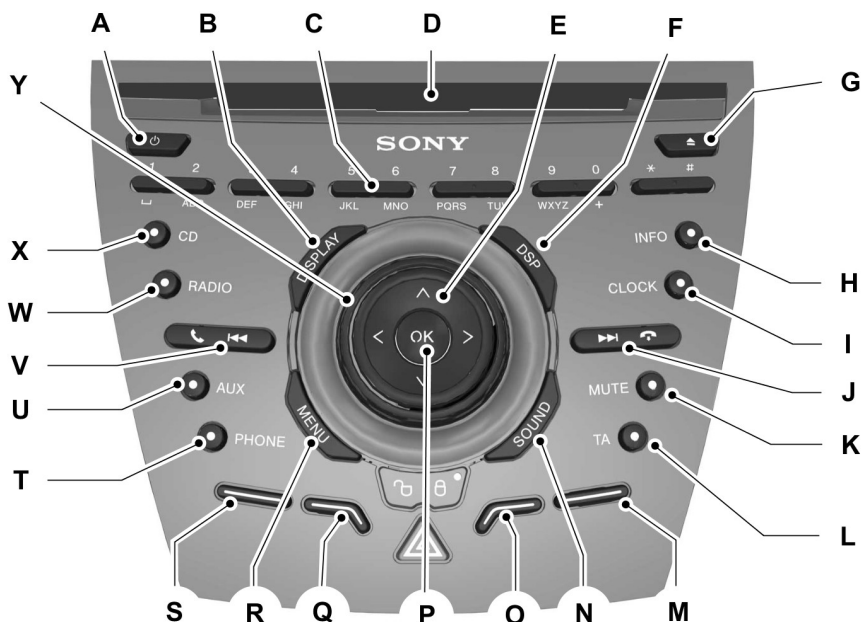


E104157

- A Descriptions for function buttons 1-4



## Audio unit overview



E129074

- A **On, Off:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off.
- B **DISPLAY:** Press the button to turn on the display into idle mode.
- C **Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns. See **Station preset buttons** (page 237).
- D **CD slot:** Where you insert a CD. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 241).
- E **Cursor arrows:** Press the button to scroll through on-screen choices.
- F **Digital signal processing:** Press the button to access the digital signal processing functions. See **Digital signal processing (DSP)** (page 239).
- G **Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 241).
- H **INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB and iPod information.
- I **CLOCK:** Press the button to access the clock functions.



## Audio unit overview

---

- J **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD when in CD mode. In phone mode, use the button to end a phone call. An incoming call can be rejected. See **Station tuning control** (page 236). See **Track selection** (page 241).
- K **MUTE:** Press the button to turn the sound off, press again to turn the sound on.
- L **TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement. See **Traffic information control** (page 237).
- M **Function button 4:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- N **SOUND:** Press the button to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, middle, balance and fade. See **Sound button** (page 236).
- O **Function button 3:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- P **OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.
- Q **Function button 2:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- R **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features.
- S **Function button 1:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- T **PHONE:** Press the button to access the phone feature of the SYNC system by pressing **PHONE** then **MENU**. See separate manual.
- U **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Auxiliary Input Jack** (page 121). See **Auxiliary input jack** (page 244).
- V **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD, When in CD mode. In phone mode use the button to begin a phone call. An incoming phone call can be accepted. See **Station tuning control** (page 236). See **Track selection** (page 241).
- W **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Audio unit operation** (page 236).
- X **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 241).
- Y **Volume:** Turn the dial to adjust the volume.



## Audio unit overview

---

Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. Descriptions for the functions are shown at the bottom of the screen display.



## SECURITY CODE

Each unit incorporates a unique code that is linked to the vehicle identification number (VIN). The system will automatically check that the audio unit and vehicle match before allowing operation.

If a security code message appears, please see your dealer.



# Audio unit operation

---

## ON/OFF CONTROL

Press the button with the ignition switched off. This will operate the audio unit for up to one hour.

If you switch the audio unit on before you switch the ignition off, the audio unit will switch off automatically after 10 minutes or when you open one of the front doors.

## SOUND BUTTON

This will allow you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass and treble).

1. Press the sound button.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to make the necessary adjustment. The display indicates the level selected.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm the new settings.

## WAVEBAND BUTTON

Press the RADIO button to select from the wavebands available.

The selector can also be used to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Alternatively, press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands. Scroll to the required waveband and press OK.

## STATION TUNING CONTROL

### DAB service linking

**Note:** *The DAB service linking is as per default off.*

**Note:** *Service linking allows cross-referencing to other corresponding frequencies of the same station, for example FM and other DAB ensembles.*

**Note:** *The system will automatically change to another corresponding station if the current one becomes unavailable, for example when leaving the coverage area.*

Switching DAB service linking on and off. See **General Information** (page 81).

### Seek tuning

Select a waveband and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

### Manual tuning

#### Type 1

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select RADIO mode and then MANUAL TUNE.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
4. Press OK to continue listening to a station.

#### Type 2 and 3

1. Press function button 2.
2. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
3. Press OK to continue listening to a station.



# Audio unit operation

---

## Scan tuning

Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.

### Type 1

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select RADIO mode and then SCAN.
3. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
4. Press OK to continue listening to a station.

### Type 2 and 3

1. Press function button 3.
2. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
3. Press function button 3 again or OK to continue listening to a station.

## STATION PRESET BUTTONS

This feature allows you to store your favorite stations so that they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the station has been stored. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

This can be repeated on each waveband and for each preset button.

**Note:** *When you drive to another part of the country, FM and DAB stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies, and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.*

## AUTOSTORE CONTROL

**Note:** *This will store up to a maximum of the 10 strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband, and overwrite the previously stored stations. It can also be used to store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.*

**Note:** *On type 3 you must select either FM AST or AM AST to use this function.*

- Press and hold function button 1 or the RADIO button.
- When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the Autostore presets.

## TRAFFIC INFORMATION CONTROL

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic program information.

### Activating traffic announcements

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the TA or TRAFFIC button. A 'TA' display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, 'TP' will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic program.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and 'Traffic announcement (TA)' will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless TA or TRAFFIC is turned off, then on again.

**Note:** *If TA is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non TA station no traffic announcement will be heard.*



# Audio unit operation

---

**Note:** *When you are listening to a non TA station and turn TA off and on again a TP seek will occur.*

## Traffic announcement volume

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume:

- Use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming TA broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

## Ending traffic announcements

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press TA or TRAFFIC during the announcement.

**Note:** *If you press TA or TRAFFIC at any other time it will switch all announcements off.*



# Audio unit menus

---

## AUTOMATIC VOLUME CONTROL

When available, automatic volume control (AVC) adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

1. Press the MENU button and select AUDIO.
2. Select AVC LEVEL or ADAPTIVE VOL.
3. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
4. Press the OK button to confirm your selection.
5. Press the MENU button to return.

## DIGITAL SIGNAL PROCESSING (DSP)

### DSP occupancy

This feature takes into account the differences in distance from the various speakers in the vehicle to each seat. Select the sitting position for which the audio is to be correctly enhanced.

### DSP equalizer

Select the music category that most suits your listening preference. The audio output will change to enhance the particular style of music chosen.

### Changing the DSP settings

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to the required DSP function.
4. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
5. Press the OK button to confirm your selection.
6. Press the MENU button to return.

## NEWS BROADCASTS

Some audio units interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband or radio data system (RDS) and enhanced other network (EON) linked stations, in the same way as traffic information is provided.

During news broadcasts, the display will indicate there is an incoming announcement. News interrupts are broadcast at the same preset volume level as traffic announcements.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to NEWS and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.

## ALTERNATIVE FREQUENCIES

Many programs that broadcast on the FM waveband have a program identification (PI) code, which can be recognized by audio units.

If your radio has alternative frequencies (AF) tuning switched on and you move from one transmission area to another, this facility will search for and switch to a stronger station signal, if one can be found.

Under certain conditions, however, AF tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and, if necessary, it will search once across the selected waveband for a genuine alternative frequency.



## Audio unit menus

---

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or, if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

When selected, 'AF' will be shown in the display.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO MENU.
3. Scroll to ALTERNAT FREQ. or ALTERNATIVE FREQ. and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.

### REGIONAL MODE (REG)

Regional mode (REG) controls the behavior of AF switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centered on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network carries the same programming.

Regional mode ON: This prevents 'random' AF switches when neighboring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode OFF: This allows a larger coverage area if neighboring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause 'random' AF switches if they are not.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to RDS REGIONAL and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.



# Compact Disc Player

---

## COMPACT DISC PLAYBACK

**Note:** During playback, the display indicates the disc, track and time that has elapsed since the start of the track.

During radio reception, press the CD button once to start CD playback.

Playback will start immediately after a disc is loaded.

## TRACK SELECTION

- Press the seek up button once to move to the next track or press it repeatedly to access later tracks.
- Press the seek down button once to replay the current track. If pressed within two seconds of the start of a track, the previous track will be selected.
- Press the seek down button repeatedly to select previous tracks.
- Press the up or down arrow buttons, and using the OK button, select the required track.

### Type 2 and 3

The desired track number may be entered using the numeric keypad. Dial the required track number until complete (for example 1 then 2 for track 12), or dial the number and directly press OK.

## FAST FORWARD/REVERSE

Press and hold the seek down or up buttons to search backwards or forwards within the tracks on the disc.

## SHUFFLE/RANDOM

Random track playback, also known as shuffle, plays all tracks on the CD in random order.

### Type 1

1. Press the MENU button and select CD MODE.
2. Select SHUFFLE, which then enables the function to be selected on or off.

When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SHUFFLE for the whole CD, or to play all the tracks in the folder in a random order.

### Type 2 and 3

Press function button 2.

**Note:** When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SHUFFLE for the whole CD, or to play all the tracks in the folder in a random order. Repeat presses of function button 2 will toggle these options.

Use the seek up or down button to select the next track to shuffle if required.

## REPEAT COMPACT DISC TRACKS

### Type 1

1. Press the MENU button and select CD MODE.
2. Select REPEAT, which then enables the function to be selected on or off. The track will replay once ended.

When an MP3 CD is playing, options include REPEAT for the track, or to repeat all the tracks in the folder.

### Type 2 and 3

Press function button 1.



# Compact Disc Player

---

When an MP3 CD is playing, options include REPEAT for the track, or to repeat all the tracks in the folder. Repeat presses of function button 1 will toggle these options.

## COMPACT DISC TRACK SCANNING

The SCAN function allows you to preview each track for approximately 5 seconds.

### Type 1

Various scan modes are possible, according to the type of CD currently playing.

1. Press the MENU button and select CD MODE.
2. Select SCAN, which then enables the function to be selected on or off.

**Note:** When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SCAN for the CD, or just the tracks in the folder.

3. Press the OK button to stop the scan mode.

### Type 2 and 3

1. Press function button 3.

**Note:** When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SCAN for the CD, or just the tracks in the folder. Repeat presses of function button 3 will toggle these options.

2. Press function button 3 again to stop the scan mode.

## MP3 FILE PLAYBACK

**Note:** Some copy protected audio files may not be read by the CD player.

The CD player also supports MP3 and WMA format audio files.

When a CD containing audio is inserted into the CD player the disc's directory structure is read in. It may take a while before playback starts and is dependant on the quality of the disc.

MP3 tracks may be recorded on the CD in several ways. They can all be placed in the root directory like a conventional audio CD, or they can be placed in folders that may represent, for example, an album, an artist, or a genre.

### Playing a multi session disc

The normal playing sequence on CD's with multiple folders is to play the tracks in the first folder, then the tracks in any folders nested inside the first folder, then move onto the second folder, and so on. For example, if folder 1 has folders 1a and 1b within it, and folder 2 contains folder 2a, the playing sequence will be folder 1, 1a, 1b, 2, 2a.

When the playback of a file is finished the playback of the other files in the same directory continues. Directory change takes place automatically when all files in the current directory have been played back.

## MP3 DISPLAY OPTIONS

When an MP3 disc is playing, certain information encoded in each track can be displayed. Such information will normally include:

- The file name
- The folder name
- ID3 information which might be the album or artist's name.

The unit will normally show the file name that is playing. To select one of the other items of information, press the **INFO** button repeatedly until the required item is shown in the display.



# Compact Disc Player

---

**Note:** If the ID3 information selected is unavailable, **NO MP3 TAG** will be shown in the display.

## CD text display options

When an audio disc with CD text is playing, limited information encoded in each track can be displayed. Such information will normally include:

- The disc name
- The artist name
- The track name.

**Note:** These display options are selected in the same way as MP3 displays. **NO DISC NAME** or **NO TRACK NAME** will be shown in the display if no information has been encoded.

## ENDING COMPACT DISC PLAYBACK

To restore radio reception on all units:

- Press the RADIO button.

**Note:** This will not eject the CD; the disc will merely pause at the point where radio reception was restored.

To resume CD playback, press the CD button again.



## Auxiliary input jack

---

**Note:** *For optimum performance when using any auxiliary device set the volume on the device high. This will reduce audio interference when charging the device via the vehicle power supply socket.*

When fitted the Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket permits an auxiliary device, such as an MP3 player, to be linked into the vehicle audio system. Output can be played through the vehicle speakers.

To connect an auxiliary device, plug it into the AUX IN socket using a 3.5 mm conventional audio jack connector.

Select the auxiliary input via the AUX or MENU button and playback will be heard through the vehicle speakers. LINE IN or LINE IN ACTIVE will appear in the vehicle audio unit display. Volume, treble and bass can be adjusted on the vehicle audio unit as normal.

The vehicle audio unit buttons can also be used to restore playback from the vehicle audio unit, while the auxiliary device remains connected.



# Audio Troubleshooting

---

## AUDIO TROUBLESHOOTING

Audio unit display	Rectification
PLEASE CHECK CD	General error message for CD fault conditions, such as cannot read the CD, data-CD inserted, etc. Ensure disc is loaded correct way up. Clean and re-try, or replace disc with known music disc. If error persists contact your dealer.
CD DRIVE MALFUNCTION	General error message for CD fault conditions such as possible mechanism fault.
CD DRIVE HIGH TEMP	Ambient temperature too hot – unit will not work until it has cooled down.
IPOD ERROR READING DEVICE	General error message for iPod fault conditions, such as cannot read the data. Ensure iPod is inserted correctly. If error persists contact your dealer.



# Navigation

Press the relevant button on the unit bezel to access the system functions. This will take you into the selected mode.

For instructions on how to operate the audio unit and the available navigation features, see the relevant audio unit procedure. See **Audio unit overview** (page 227).

## Loading Map Data

### WARNINGS



The indicated maximum speed may not be applicable to your vehicle. It is always your responsibility to control your vehicle, supervise any system and obey the correct speed limit. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control.



The front glass on the liquid crystal display may break if hit with a hard object. If the glass breaks, do not touch the liquid crystalline material. In case of contact with the skin, wash immediately with soap and water.

**Note:** Do not switch the ignition on or attempt to start the engine while the software is updating.

**Note:** Do not clean the unit with solvents or aerosol cleaning agents. Use only a damp cloth.

**Note:** The navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot to operate the navigation system. If you need a replacement SD card, see an authorized dealer.

**Note:** The SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, push the card in and release it. Do not attempt to remove the card without first pushing it in. This could cause damage.



E129900

1. Load the navigation SD card into the slot.
2. Press the **NAV** button. The road safety warning confirms the map data import was successful.
3. The system is now ready to use.

For map updates and system upgrades, see an authorized dealer.

**Note:** You can only use Ford licensed data.

## Road Safety

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



# Navigation

**Note:** You are ultimately responsible for the safe operation of your vehicle and must evaluate whether it is safe to follow route suggestions. Navigation features are provided only as an aid. Driving decisions based on observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations must be observed. Do not follow route suggestions if they would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate due to errors, changes in roads, traffic or driving conditions.

## Safety Information

If detailed viewing of route instructions is necessary, pull off the road when it is safe to do so and park your vehicle.

## Setting a Route

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Select **Destination input**.
3. Starting at the top, select the country followed by either the postcode or city and street name, together with the house number or intersection.
4. Use the arrow buttons to enter your address details.

5. After entering sufficient information, select **Start guidance** or press function key one to begin route calculation.

**Note:** After first entry, the country selected will remain the default option until you manually change it.

**Note:** If required you can select different character screens by using the up and down arrow buttons.

**Note:** If you only need to navigate to a city center, just enter the city name and start guidance.

**Note:** If you only need to navigate to a district, within a city for example, just enter the district name and start guidance.

The route is calculated and the screen returns to the main navigation screen. If prompted, select the type of route you require first. Follow the screen and voice prompts to reach your destination.

## Menu Structure

You can access the menu using the information and entertainment display control. See **Information Displays** (page 81).

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

Navigation	
Route*	Active guidance
	Route sections list
	Block next section
	Unblock rte sctn
Destination input*	Country
	City/postcode
	Street



# Navigation

Navigation		
	District	
	Start guidance	
Traffic*	TA	
	TMC for route	
	All TMC	
	Block next section	
	Route sections list	
	Unblock rte sctn	
Home address*	Start guidance	
	Change address	
Last destinations*		
Favourites*	Favourites (A-Z)	
Points of interest*	POIs nearby	
	Near destination	
	Along motorway	
	POIs near address	
	Search by name	
Tour planning*	New tour	
	Stored tours	
Store position*		
Route options*	Route	Eco
		Fast
		Short
		Always ask
	Driver:	Leisurely
		Normal



# Navigation

Navigation		
		Fast
	Eco settings	Trailer
		Roof box
	Dynamic	
	Motorway	
	Tunnel	
	Ferry/motorail	
	Toll	
	Seasonal roads	
	Toll sticker	
Special functions*	GPS info	
	System info	
	Enter position	
	Demo mode	

\*For a description on these menu items refer to the relevant table.

## Route Options

Press the **NAV** button and scroll to **Route options**. You can then set your route options for any of the following.

### Route

You can select **Always ask** to make sure that you are always given the choice of route option for your journey.

### Eco

Uses the most fuel efficient route.

**Note:** *Your driving style will influence this.*

### Fast

Uses the fastest route possible.

### Short

Uses the shortest distance possible.

### Driver

#### Leisurely

This option will calculate your time of arrival based on a leisurely drive to the destination.

#### Normal

This option will calculate your time of arrival based on a normal drive to the destination.



# Navigation

---

## **Fast**

This option will calculate your time of arrival based on a fast drive to the destination.

## **Eco Settings**

### **Trailer**

Use this feature to change the economy settings of your journey relating to whether or not you are towing a trailer and if so the size of trailer being towed.

### **Roof Box**

Use this feature to change the economy settings of your journey relating to the use of a roof box.

### **Dynamic**

When switched on, and if the unit is receiving a valid traffic message channel signal, the route will be automatically updated to take into account real time traffic incidents or congestion.

**Note:** *This feature can be useful in avoiding delays or hold ups on journeys.*

### **Freeway**

When switched off the system will avoid freeways on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.

### **Tunnel**

When switched off the system will avoid tunnels on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.

## **Ferries and Car Trains**

When switched off the system will avoid ferry crossings and car train facilities on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.

### **Toll**

When switched off the system will avoid toll roads on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.

### **Seasonal Roads**

When switched off the system will avoid seasonal roads (for example, mountain passes) on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.

### **Toll Sticker**

When switched off the system will avoid toll routes and automatically update your route distance and timings.

## **Information**

Press the information button to view details of your current location or journey. During active route guidance pressing this button will repeat the last navigation instruction.

## **Setting Your Navigation Preferences**

Select settings for the system to take into account when planning your route.



# Navigation

**Press the NAV button and choose any of the following options.**

<b>When You Select</b>	<b>You Can</b>
Destination input	Enter your destination details (for example enter city names, enter street names or pick a place from a map).
Traffic	Choose how you want the system to handle traffic problems along your route (for example, block sections on route).
Home address	See the location on the map currently stored as the home position. Only one entry can be saved as the home address.
Last destinations	Access a history of previous destinations entered in the system. Select the required repeat destination from the list.
Favorites	See a list of your saved favorites.
Points of interest	Search for and select points of interest nearby, on your route or at your destination. You can search by name or by category.
Tour planning	Set up and store a new tour by entering a number of different destinations and select the order in which you wish to visit them. You can also modify an existing tour or recall a previous tour. The system will automatically calculate and display your chosen journey.
Store position	Store and name your current position. This will automatically save in your favorites.
Route options	Set your route options from the available list.
Special functions	Select GPS and system information or a demonstration of the system functionality. Select a demonstration mode where the system will simulate a journey whilst the vehicle is stationary. You can manually select a vehicle start position.



# Navigation

**Press the MENU button, select the navigation option and choose any of the following options.**

When You Select	You Can
Route options	Set your route options.
Map display	Customize the map display for your journey (for example arrows on map, arrival times and map content).
Assistance options	Customize display information for your journey (for example signs, lanes and speed limits). Turn the hazard warning feature on or off.
Personal data	Delete personal data (for example your home address).
Reset all settings	Reset the navigation settings.

## Storing Your Home Address

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Select the home address option.
3. Enter the required details using the arrow buttons.
4. Press the confirm function button.

**Note:** *Your last destination will automatically display if you go to change your home address.*

## Adding a Favorite

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Scroll to the destination input option.
3. Enter the required details using the arrow buttons.
4. Press the store function button.

**Note:** *If you select store position, this will also save the destination in your favorites.*

## Selecting a Favorite

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Select the favorites option.
3. Scroll to the required destination using the arrow buttons.

4. Press the **OK** button to start navigation.

## Adjusting the Navigation Voice Level

You can adjust the voice prompt level during an active voice prompt by using the volume control.

**Note:** *During active route guidance pressing the information button will repeat the last navigation instruction.*

## Nav Audio Mixing

This feature allows you to adjust the volume mix between the audio unit and navigation voice level. See **General Information** (page 81).

## Tolerant Destination Input

This function will search a number of destinations with a similar spelling to what you have entered. This is helpful if you are unsure on how to spell a destination.

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Scroll to the destination input option.
3. Before entering your destination details select **Tolerant** and then begin to input your destination.



# Navigation

---

4. Press the **OK** button. The system will search for destinations with similar spellings.
5. Use the arrow buttons to select a destination from the list and press the **OK** button to confirm your destination.

## Route Displays

### Map Display

Press the **MAP** button to view map mode. This view will show your current location with your vehicle in the center shown as an arrow surrounded by a circle. The arrow will face in the direction of travel.

The information on the top line gives the name of the current road, or the next road to take if a turn is approaching.

You can change the way the map is displayed by altering the zoom and orientation settings. Press function button one. The current map scale is shown on the display.

Map scale settings may be set between 0.05 miles to 500 miles or 50 meters to 500 kilometers, with an auto setting on the top. The auto setting continuously changes the map scale according to vehicle speed and the road type being driven.

You can use the arrow buttons to change the view to 2D, turn-by-turn, 3D or a clean view.

### Zoom

This feature will automatically increase the zoom on the map display at times when you are required to make a turn, or perform more complex maneuvers. Shortly after the zoom scale will return to the previous level when in auto mode.

Manual: Press function button one and adjust the setting using the left or right arrow buttons. Press **OK** to confirm your setting.

Auto: Press function button one and using the up or down arrow key select the auto option. Press **OK** to confirm your setting.

### Move

When you are in map mode, press function button two. You can now use the arrow buttons on the audio unit to move around the map.

Press function button two again to return to the original view.

### Navigation Display

After commencing a navigation route, the default screen is the main navigation screen.

Once an active route is underway, guidance will be given by on-screen information and voice prompts. Whichever audio source you wish to leave the unit in, basic turn by turn and distance information will remain on the screen in the form of a graphic inset. You do not need to leave the unit on the main navigation screen when you are navigating a route. Press the **MAP** button at any time to return to the main navigation screen. Slightly more detailed information on your route may be available using the main navigation screen if required.

### Hazard Spot Warning

The system supports a hazard spot warning feature which informs you with visible and audible feedback about hazardous traffic areas. You can switch the system on and off using the information and entertainment display menu. See **Assistance options** in the navigation menu.

**Note:** *This feature is only available in certain countries.*



## Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase. See an authorized dealer.

## Type Approvals



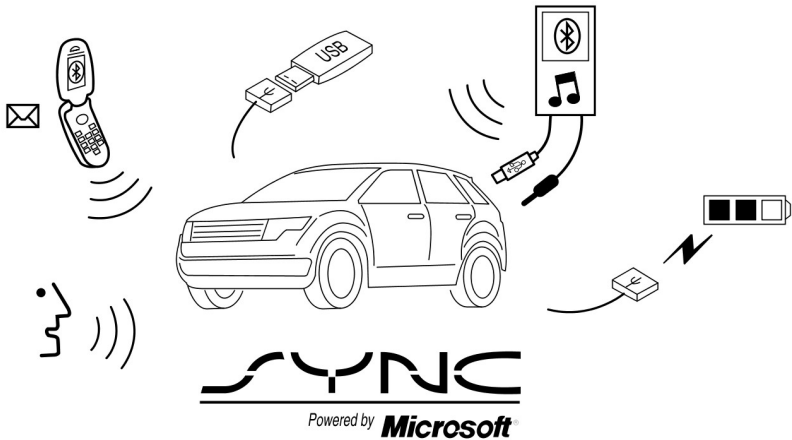
SD Logo is a trademark.

The navigation software is based in part on the work of the FreeType team © 2006

The navigation software is based in part on the work of the independent JPEG Group.



## GENERAL INFORMATION



E142598

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone and portable media player.

This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls
- Access and play music from your media player
- Use Emergency Assistance
- Access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands
- Stream music from your connected cell phone
- Select pre-defined text messages

- Use the advanced voice recognition system
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this).

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

### Support

For further support, see an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.



## Safety Information

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and cables where you cannot step on them or they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. Refer to your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

## Privacy Information

When a cell phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile that is linked to that cell phone. The system creates the profile to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your phonebook, text messages (read and unread) and call history. This will include the history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. If you connect a media player, the system creates and retains an index of

supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cell phone profile, media player index and development log will remain in the system unless deleted. They are generally accessible in your vehicle only when you connect your cell phone or media player. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you complete a master reset to erase all stored information. See **Information Displays** (page 81).

Special equipment is required to access system data. Access to your vehicle's SYNC module is also required. We will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described without consent. Examples where system data can be accessed are for a court order, where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of us. Further privacy information is available. See **SYNC™ Applications and Services** (page 269).

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is around you.

### Helpful Hints

Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.



Before giving a voice command, wait for the system announcement to finish followed by a single beep. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.

Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.

You can interrupt the system at any time while it is speaking by pressing the voice button. You can also cancel a voice session at any time by pressing and holding the voice button.

## Initiating a Voice Session



Press the voice button. A list of available commands appears in the display.

Say	If you want to
"Bluetooth Audio"	Stream audio from your cell phone.
"Cancel"	Cancel the requested action.
"Line in"	Access the device connected to the auxiliary input jack.
"Phone"	Make calls.
"SYNC"	Return to the main menu.
"USB"	Access the device connected to your USB port.
"Voice settings"	Adjust the level of voice interaction and feedback.
"Help"	Hear a list of voice commands available in the current mode.

## System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and your chosen level of interaction. You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

## Adjusting the Interaction Level



Press the voice button. Say "Voice settings" when prompted, then any of the following:

When you say	The system
"Interaction mode advanced"	Provides less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
"Interaction mode standard"	Provides more detailed interaction and guidance.

The system defaults to the standard interaction mode.



Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there is more than one possible response to your request. For example, the system may ask if the

command phone is correct.

Press the voice button to change the confirmation prompt setting. Say "Voice settings" when prompted, then any of the following:

When you say	The system
"Confirmation prompts off"	Makes a best guess from the command. You may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.
"Confirmation prompts on"	Clarifies your voice command with a short question.

The system creates suggestion lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice commands. When switched on, the system may prompt you with as many as four possibilities for clarification.

For example, say "one" after the tone to call John Doe at home. Say "two" after the tone to call Johnny Doe on mobile. Say "three" after the tone to call Jane Doe at home.

The same logic applies to media content. For example, say, "one" after the tone to play John Doe. Say "two" after the tone to play Johnny Doe. Say "three" after the tone to play Jane Doe.

When you say	The system
"Media candidate lists off"	Makes a best guess from the media suggestion list. The system may occasionally ask you questions.
"Media candidate lists on"	Clarifies your voice command for media suggestions.
"Phone candidate lists off"	Makes a best guess from the cell phone suggestion list. The system may occasionally ask you questions.
"Phone candidate lists on"	Clarifies your voice command for cell phone suggestions.

## Changing the Voice Settings

You can change the voice settings using the information and entertainment display.

1. Press the **MENU** button.

2. Select **SYNC-Settings**.
3. Select **Voice Settings**.



## USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download are cell phone dependent features. To check your cell phone's compatibility, refer to your device's manual or visit the regional Ford website.

### Pairing a Cell Phone For the First Time

**Note:** You must switch the ignition and radio on.

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button. When the audio display indicates that no phones are paired, select the option to add.

3. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your cell phone to start the pairing process.
4. When prompted on your cell phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Depending on your cell phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone (the cell phone the system automatically tries to connect with first when you switch the ignition on), downloading your phonebook, etc.

### Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

**Note:** You must switch the ignition and radio on.

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button.
3. Select the option for Bluetooth devices.
4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Select the option to add. This starts the pairing process.
6. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your device to start the pairing process.
7. When prompted on your cell phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.



The system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell

phone as the primary cell phone, downloading your phonebook, etc.

## Cell Phone Voice Commands

"Phone"	
"Call <name>" <sup>1</sup>	"Go to privacy"
"Call <name> at home" <sup>1</sup>	"Hold"
"Call <name> at work" <sup>1</sup>	"Join"
"Call <name> in office" <sup>1</sup>	"Menu" <sup>2,4</sup>
"Call <name> on cell" <sup>1</sup>	"Phonebook <name>" <sup>2</sup>
"Call <name> on other" <sup>1</sup>	"Phonebook <name> at home" <sup>2</sup>
"Call history incoming" <sup>2</sup>	"Phonebook <name> in office" <sup>2</sup>
"Call history missed" <sup>2</sup>	"Phonebook <name> at work" <sup>2</sup>
"Call history outgoing" <sup>2</sup>	"Phonebook <name> on cell" <sup>2</sup>
"Connections" <sup>2</sup>	"Phonebook <name> on other" <sup>2</sup>
"Dial" <sup>1,3</sup>	-

<sup>1</sup> You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.

<sup>2</sup> These commands are not available until your cell phone information has completely downloaded using Bluetooth.

<sup>3</sup> See **Dial** table.

<sup>4</sup> See **Menu** table.

## Phonebook Commands

When you ask the system to access a phonebook name, number, etc., the requested information appears in the audio display. Press the voice button and say "call" to call the contact.



"Dial"
"112" (one-one-two), etc.
"700" (seven hundred)
"800" (eight hundred)
"900" (nine hundred)
"Pound", (#)
"Number <0-9>"
"Asterisk" (*)
"Clear" (deletes all entered digits)
"Delete" (deletes one digit)
"Plus"
"Star"

**Note:** To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or any button on the audio unit.

"Menu"
"(Phone) connections"
"(Phone) settings (message) notification off"
"(Phone) settings (message) notification on"
"(Phone) settings (set) phone ringer"
"(Phone) settings (set) ringer 1"
"(Phone) settings (set) ringer 2"
"(Phone) settings (set) ringer 3"
"(Phone) settings (set) ringer off"
"Phone name"
"Text message inbox"

Words in parenthesis are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command.



## Making a Call

1. Press the voice button and when prompted say "call <name>" or "dial" followed by a number.
2. When the system confirms the number, say "dial" again to initiate the call.

To erase the last spoken digit, say "delete" or press the left arrow button on the audio unit. To erase all spoken digits, say "clear" or press and hold the left arrow button on the audio unit.

To end the call, press the end call button on the steering wheel or select the end call option in the audio display and press **OK**.

## Receiving a Call

When receiving a call, you can:

- Answer the call by pressing the accept call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the accept call option in the audio display. Press the **OK** button.
- Reject the call by pressing the reject call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the reject call option in the audio display. Press the **OK** button.
- Ignore the call by doing nothing.

## Cell Phone Options During an Active Call

During an active call, you have extra menu features which become available such as putting a call on hold, joining calls, etc.

To access this menu, choose one of the options available at the bottom of the audio display or select the option for more.

When You Select	You Can
Mic. off	Turn your vehicle's microphone off. To turn the microphone on, select the option again.
Privacy	Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cell phone for a more private conversation. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is private.
Hold	Put an active call on hold. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is on hold.
Dial a number	Enter numbers using the audio system numeric keypad, for example numbers for passwords.
Join Calls	Join two separate calls. The system supports a maximum of three callers on a multi-party or conference call. 1. Select the option for more. 2. Access the desired contact through the system or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, select the option for more.



When You Select	You Can
	3. Scroll to the option to join calls and press the <b>OK</b> button.
Phonebook	Access your phonebook contacts. 1. Select the option for more. 2. Scroll to the option for phonebook and press the <b>OK</b> button. 3. Scroll through your phonebook contacts. 4. Press the <b>OK</b> button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 5. Press the <b>OK</b> button or dial button to call the selection.
Call History	Access your call history log. 1. Select the option for more. 2. Scroll to the option for call history appears and press the <b>OK</b> button. 3. Scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed). 4. Press the <b>OK</b> button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 5. Press the <b>OK</b> button or dial button to call the selection.

## Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone Menu

You can access your call history, phonebook, sent text messages as well as access cell phone and system settings. You can also access advanced features such as emergency assistance.

1. Press the **PHONE** button to enter the cell phone menu.
2. Select one of the options available.

When You Select	You Can
Dial a number	Dial a number using the audio system numeric keypad.
Redial	Redial the last number called (if available). Press the <b>OK</b> button to select.
Phonebook <sup>1</sup>	Access your downloaded phonebook. 1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to confirm and enter. You can use the options at the bottom of the screen to quickly access an alphabetical category. You can also use the letters on the keypad to jump in the list. 2. Scroll through your phonebook contacts. 3. Press the <b>OK</b> button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 4. Press the <b>OK</b> button or dial button to call the selection.



When You Select	You Can
Call History <sup>1</sup>	Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. 1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select. 2. Scroll to select either incoming calls, outgoing calls or missed calls. Press the <b>OK</b> button to make your selection. 3. Press the <b>OK</b> button or dial button to call the selection. The system attempts to automatically re-download your phonebook and call history each time your cell phone connects to the system. You must turn on the auto download feature if your cell phone supports it.
Speed Dial	Select one of 10 speed dial entries. To set a speed dial entry, go to the phonebook and press and hold one of the numbers on the audio system numeric keypad.
Text message <sup>1</sup>	Send, download and delete text messages.
BT Devices	Access the option for Bluetooth device menu listings (add, connect, set as primary, on or off, delete).
Phone settings <sup>1</sup>	View various settings and features on your cell phone.
Emergency Assistance	Turn the SYNC emergency assistance feature on or off.

<sup>1</sup> This is a cell phone dependent feature.

## Text Messaging

**Note:** *This is a cell phone dependent feature.*

The system allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

### Receiving a Text Message

**Note:** *Your cell phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.*

**Note:** *Only one recipient is allowed per text message.*

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the audio display indicates you have a new message.

You have these options:

- Select the listen option to have the system read the message to you.
- Select the view option to open the text message. Select the ignore option or do nothing and the message goes into your text message inbox. Once selected, you have the ability to have the message read out to you, to view other messages or to select the more option.



- Press the voice button and say "Read text message".
- Select the more option and use the arrow buttons to scroll through further options. Choose from the following:
  - **Reply to sender:** Press the **OK** button to access and then scroll through the list of pre-defined messages to send.
  - **Call sender:** Press the **OK** button to call the sender of the message.
  - **Forward msg:** Press the **OK** button to forward the message to anyone in your phonebook or call history. You can also choose to enter a number.
- **Delete** allows you to delete current text messages from the system (not your cell phone). The audio display indicates when all your text messages have been deleted.
- **More** allows you to delete all messages or to manually trigger a download of all unread messages from your cell phone.

When you select the option to send a text message, a list of pre-defined messages appear in the audio display.

## Sending a Text Message

1. Select the send option when the desired selection is highlighted in the audio display.
2. Select the confirmation option when the contact appears and press the **OK** button again to confirm when the system asks if you would like to send the message. Each text message is sent with a pre-defined signature.

**Note:** You can send text messages either by choosing a contact from the phonebook and selecting the text option from the audio display or by replying to a received message in the inbox.

## Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings

These are cell phone dependent features. Your cell phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ringtone, text message notification, modify your phonebook and set up automatic download.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the phone settings option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

## Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select the text messaging option, then press the **OK** button.

A list of all available text messages appears.

You can choose from the following options:

- **New** allows you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.
- **View** allows you to read the full message and in addition provides the option to have the message read out to you by the system. To go to the next message select the more option. This allows you to reply to the sender, call the sender or forward the message.



When You Select	You Can
Set as master	If this option is checked, the system will use this cell phone as the master when there is more than one cell phone paired to the system. This option can be changed for all paired cell phones (not only for the active one) using the Bluetooth devices menu.
Phone Status	See the cell phone name, provider name, cell phone number, signal level and battery level. When done, press the left arrow button to return to the cell phone status menu.
Set ringtone	Select which ringtone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's or your cell phone's). 1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select and scroll to hear each ringtone. 2. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select. If your cell phone supports in-band ringing, your cell phone's ringtone sounds when you choose the cell phone ringtone option.
Text msg notify	Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. 1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to turn the audible tone on or off.
Phonebook pref.	Modify the contents of your phonebook, e.g. add, delete, download. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select and scroll between: <b>Add contacts:</b> Press the <b>OK</b> button to add more contacts from your phonebook. Push the desired contacts on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual on how to push contacts. <b>Delete:</b> Press the <b>OK</b> button to delete the current phonebook and call history. When a message asking you to delete appears, select the option to confirm. The system takes you back to the menu for phone settings. <b>Download now:</b> Press the <b>OK</b> button to select and download your phonebook to the system. <b>Auto-download:</b> Check or uncheck this option to automatically download your phonebook each time your cell phone connects to the system. Downloading times are cell phone dependent and quantity dependent. When automatic download is switched on, any changes, additions or deletions saved in the system since your last download are deleted.



When You Select	You Can
	When automatic download is switched off, your phonebook will not be downloaded when your cell phone connects to the system. Your phonebook, call history and text messages can only be accessed when your paired cell phone is connected to the system.

## Bluetooth Devices

This menu provides access to your Bluetooth devices. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options. It allows you to add, connect and delete devices and set a cell phone as primary.

## Bluetooth Devices Menu Options

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the Bluetooth device option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

When You Select	You Can
Add	Pair additional cell phones to the system. 1. Select the option to add to start the pairing process. 2. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for <b>SYNC</b> on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual if necessary. 3. When prompted on your cell phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful. 4. When the option to set the cell phone as the primary cell phone appears, select either yes or no. 5. Depending on the functionality of your cell phone, you may be asked extra questions (for example, if you would like to download your phonebook). Select either yes or no to confirm your response.
Delete	Delete a paired cell phone. Select the delete option and confirm when the system asks to delete the selected device. After deleting a cell phone from the list, the cell phone can only be connected again by repeating the full pairing process.
Master	Set a previously paired cell phone as your primary cell phone. Select the master option to confirm the primary cell phone.



When You Select	You Can
	The system attempts to connect with the primary cell phone every time you switch the ignition on. When a cell phone is selected as primary, it appears first in the list and is marked with an asterisk.
Conn.	Connect a previously paired cell phone. You can only have one cell phone connected at a time to use the cell phone functionality. When another cell phone is connected, the previous cell phone will be disconnected from the telephone services. The system allows you to use different Bluetooth devices for the cell phone functionality and the Bluetooth audio music playback feature at the same time. Select this option to connect to the selected previously paired cell phone.
Discon.	Disconnects the selected cell phone. Select this option and confirm when asked to. After disconnecting a cell phone, it can be connected again without repeating the full pairing process.

## System Settings

2. Select the SYNC settings option, then press the **OK** button.

1. Press the **MENU** button.

When You Select	You Can
Bluetooth on	Check or uncheck this option to turn the Bluetooth interface of the system on or off. Select this option then press the <b>OK</b> button to change the option's status.
Set defaults	Return to the factory default settings. This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). Select this option and confirm when <b>Set defaults?</b> appears in the audio display.
Master reset	Completely erase all information stored on the system (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to the factory default settings. Select this option and confirm when <b>Master reset?</b> appears in the audio display. The display indicates when complete and the system takes you back to the <b>SYNC-Settings</b> menu.
Install on SYNC	Install applications or software updates you have downloaded.



When You Select	You Can
	Select this option and confirm when <b>Install on SYNC</b> appears in the audio display. There must be a valid SYNC application or update available on the USB thumb drive in order to finish an installation successfully.
System info	Display the system's version numbers as well as its serial number. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select.
Voice settings	The voice settings submenu contains various options. See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 256).
Browse USB	Browse the actual menu structure of the connected USB device. Press the <b>OK</b> button and use the up or down arrows to scroll through the folders and files. Use the left or right arrows to enter and leave a folder. Media content can be directly selected for playback from this menu.
Emergency assistance	You can turn the emergency assistance feature on or off. See <b>SYNC™ Applications and Services</b> (page 269).

## SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES

1. Press the **MENU** button to enter the system's menu.
2. Scroll to **SYNC-Apps**, and then press **OK**.

A list of available applications appears. Each application might have its own specific settings.

### SYNC Emergency Assistance

#### WARNINGS



For this feature to work, your cell phone must have Bluetooth and be compatible with the system.



Always place your cell phone in a secure location inside your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the cell phone which could prevent this feature from working correctly.

#### WARNINGS



Unless the feature setting is switched on prior to a crash, the system will not attempt to place an emergency call which could delay the response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death. Do not wait for the system to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear emergency assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

**Note:** Before selecting this feature, you must read the Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.



**Note:** When you switch this feature on or off, that setting applies for all paired cell phones. If you have turned this feature off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch on the ignition, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown or both.

**Note:** Every cell phone operates differently. While this feature works with most cell phones, some cell phones may experience difficulties using this feature.

**Note:** Make sure you are familiar with the information about airbag deployment. See **Occupant protection** (page 26).

If a crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, the system may contact emergency services by dialing 112 (the wireless emergency number that works in most European countries) through a paired and connected cell phone. For more information about the system and Emergency Assistance, visit the regional Ford website.

## Switching Emergency Assistance On and Off

1. Press the **PHONE** button to enter the cell phone menu.
2. Select the Emergency Assistance option and press **OK**.
3. Select the option you require and press **OK**.

## Display Options

If you switch on this feature, a confirmation message appears in the display.

If you switch off this feature, a dialog appears in the display, which allows you to set a voice reminder.

Off with voice reminder provides a display and voice reminder when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

Off without voice reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder when your cell phone connects.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

**Note:** This feature only works in a European country or region where SYNC Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. Visit the regional Ford website for details.

## In the Event of a Crash

**Note:** Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off (which may turn on Emergency Assistance). However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone. The system attempts to dial 112.



Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system attempts to dial 112.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant icon in the display or by pressing the hang up button on your cell phone.

During a call:

- Emergency assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

**Note:** While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.

**Note:** During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.

**Note:** It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.

**Note:** It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.

**Note:** The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from SYNC Emergency Assistance.

Emergency assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a European country or region where the SYNC Emergency Assistance cannot place the call. Visit the regional Ford website for details.



## Important Information about the Emergency Assistance Feature

Emergency assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following markets: Albania, Belarus, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Macedonia, Netherlands, Ukraine, Moldova and Russia.

Visit the regional Ford website for latest details.

## Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

## USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your media player through your vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories such as artist or albums.

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any media player including: iPod, Zune, Plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats such as MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

## Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port

**Note:** If your media player has a power switch, make sure you switch on the device.

## To Connect Using Voice Commands

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the voice button and when prompted, say "USB".
3. You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. Refer to the media voice commands.

## To Connect Using the System Menu

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the **AUX** button until an initializing message appears in the display.
3. Depending on how many media files are on your connected device, an indexing message may appear in the display. When indexing is complete, the screen returns to the **Play** menu.

Press **Browse**. Now you can scroll through the list:

- **Play all.**
- **Playlists.**
- **Songs.**
- **Artists.**
- **Albums.**
- **Genres.**
- **Browse USB.**
- **Reset USB.**
- **Exit.**

## What's Playing?

At any time during playback, you can press the voice button and ask the system what is playing. The system reads the metadata tags (if populated) of the current track.



## Media Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say "USB", and then any of the following:

"USB"	
"Pause"	"Play track <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>
"Play"	"Repeat off"
"Play album <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>	"Repeat on"
"Play All"	"Search album <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>
"Play artist <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>	"Search artist <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>
"Play genre <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>	"Search genre <name>" <sup>1</sup>
"Play next folder" <sup>3</sup>	"Search song <name>" <sup>1</sup>
"Play next track"	"Search track <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>
"Play playlist <name>" <sup>1,2</sup>	"Shuffle off"
"Play previous folder" <sup>3</sup>	"Shuffle on"
"Play previous track"	"Similar music"
"Play song <name>" <sup>1</sup>	"What's playing?"

<sup>1</sup> <name> is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything such as desired group, artist or song.

<sup>2</sup> Voice commands that are not available until indexing is complete.

<sup>3</sup> Voice commands that are only available in folder mode.



Voice command guide	
"Search genre" or "Play genre"	The system searches all the data from your indexed music and if available, begins to play the chosen type of music. You can only play genres of music that are present in the genre metadata tags that you have on your media player.
"Similar music"	The system compiles a playlist and then plays similar music to what is currently playing from the USB port using indexed metadata information.
Search or Play, "Artist", "Track, or "Album"	The system searches for a specific artist, track or album from the music indexed through the USB port.

The system is also capable of playing music from your cell phone via Bluetooth.

To switch on the Bluetooth audio, use the **AUX** or **Source** button or press the voice button. When prompted say, "Bluetooth audio", then any of the following:

"Bluetooth Audio"
"Connections"
"Pause"
"Play"
"Play next track"
"Play previous track"

## Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select how to play your music (such as by artist, genre, shuffle or repeat) and to find similar music or reset the index of your USB devices.

1. Press **AUX** to select USB playback and then **Options** to enter the **Media** menu.
2. Scroll to cycle through:



When you select	You can
Shuffle playlist and Repeat track	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Similar music	You can play similar types of music to the current playlist from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each track to compile a playlist. The system then creates a new list of similar tracks and then begins playing. Each track must have the metadata tags populated for this feature. With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks will not be available in voice recognition, play menu or similar music. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in mass storage device mode they are available in voice recognition, Play menu browsing and Similar Music. The system places Unknowns into any unpopulated metadata tag.
Reset SYNC USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

## Accessing Your USB Song Library

This menu allows you to select and play your media files by artist, album, genre, playlist and track or even to browse what is on your USB device.

1. Make sure you plug your device into your vehicle's USB port and switch it on.
2. Press **AUX** to select USB playback and then **Browse**.

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media. If there are media files, you have the following options to scroll through and select:

When you select	You can
Play all	Play all indexed media files from your playing device one at a time in numerical order.* Press <b>OK</b> to select. The first track title appears in the display.
Playlists	Access your playlists (from formats such as .ASX, .M3U, .WPL or .MTP).* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired playlist, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Songs	Search for and play a specific indexed track.* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select.



When you select	You can
	2. Scroll to select the desired track, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Artists	Sort all indexed media files by artist. Once selected, the system lists and then plays all artists and tracks alphabetically.* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired artist, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Albums	Sort all indexed media files by albums.* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired albums, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Genres	Sort indexed music by genre (category) type.* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired genre, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Browse USB	Browse all supported media files on your media player connected to the USB port. You can only view media files that are compatible with SYNC; other saved files are not visible. 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. 2. Scroll to browse indexed media files on your flash drive, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete, you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

\* You can use the buttons at the bottom of the audio display to jump to a certain alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the numeric keypad to jump in the list.

## Bluetooth Devices and System Settings

You can access these menus using the audio display. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 259).

## SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the regional Ford website.



Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
A lot of background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC is not set to off.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my SYNC phonebook is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to your cell phone's memory.
		Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.



Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
		Try deleting your device from SYNC and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch off the auto download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.
		Access the text messaging menu of SYNC to see if your cell phone supports the feature. Press the <b>PHONE</b> button and then scroll and select the option for text messaging, then press <b>OK</b> .
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.



USB and media issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Try switching off the device, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure correctly insert the USB cable to the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
SYNC does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC and press play on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.
When I connect my iPhone or iPod Touch through the USB and Bluetooth Audio at the same time, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	From the iPhone or iPod Touch music now playing screen, select the audio device airplay icon at the very bottom of your iPhone or iPod Touch screen.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through Bluetooth Audio, select SYNC.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through USB, select Dock Connector.



Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	The microphone for the system is either in your rear view mirror or in the headliner just above the windshield.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Say the song or artist exactly as the system saved it. If you say, "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
	If the song titles are in capital letters, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".	
The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.		Do not use special characters in the title, as the system does not recognize them.
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands at the beginning of the cell phone section.
		You can also use the cell phone and media suggestion lists to get a list of possible suggestions when the system cannot fully understand you. See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 256).



Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Make sure you are saying the name exactly as the system saved it. For example, if the contact name is Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".
		The system works better if you list full names such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".
	Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar or they may contain special characters.	Do not use special characters such as 123 or ICE as the system does not recognize them.
	Your phonebook contacts may be in capital letters.	If the contacts are in capital letters, you have to spell them. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		<b>Helpful Hint:</b> You can select your contact manually. Press <b>PHONE</b> . Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.



Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").
My previous Bluetooth voice control system allowed me to control the radio, CD, and climate control systems. Why can I not control these systems with SYNC?	The focus of SYNC is to control your mobile devices and the content stored on them.	SYNC offers significant capability beyond the previous system such as dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").



General		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC remains in the current active language.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, play artist Madonna).



# Appendices

---

## TYPE APPROVALS

### FCC/INDUSTRY CANADA NOTICE

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC ID: WJLRX-42

IC: 7847A-RX42

Changes or modifications to your device not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance can void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### RX-42 - declaration of conformity

We, the party responsible for compliance, declare under our sole responsibility that the Handset Integration product RX-42 is in conformity with the provisions of the following Council Directive: 1999/5/EC. A copy of the Declaration of Conformity can be found at:

[www.novero.com/declaration\\_of\\_conformity](http://www.novero.com/declaration_of_conformity)

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

## TYPE APPROVALS

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.

## TYPE APPROVALS



© 2008 NAVTEQ B.V. All rights reserved.



## Appendices

(AT)	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
(PL)	"© EuroGeographics"
(FR)	"source: GéoRoute® IGN France & BD Cartho® IGN France"
(DE)	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
(GB)	"Based upon Crown Copyright material."
(GR)	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
(IT)	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
(NO)	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
(PT)	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"
(ES)	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
(SE)	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
(CH)	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie"

### TYPE APPROVALS



SD Logo is a trademark.

### TYPE APPROVALS

#### EU Declaration

Hereby, Valeo declares that this short range device is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.



## Appendices

### Certificate for United Arab Emirates



E125209

ER-GEN-00-0002-24

### TYPE APPROVALS


The navigation software is based in part on the work of the FreeType team © 2006


### TYPE APPROVALS


The navigation software is based in part on the work of the independent JPEG Group.


## ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY


### WARNINGS

 Your vehicle has been tested and certified to legislations relating to electromagnetic compatibility (72/245/EEC, UN ECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to ensure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment fitted by properly trained technicians.

 The RF (radio frequency) transmitter equipment (e.g. cellular telephones, amateur radio transmitters etc.) may only be fitted to your vehicle if they comply with the parameters shown in the table below. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

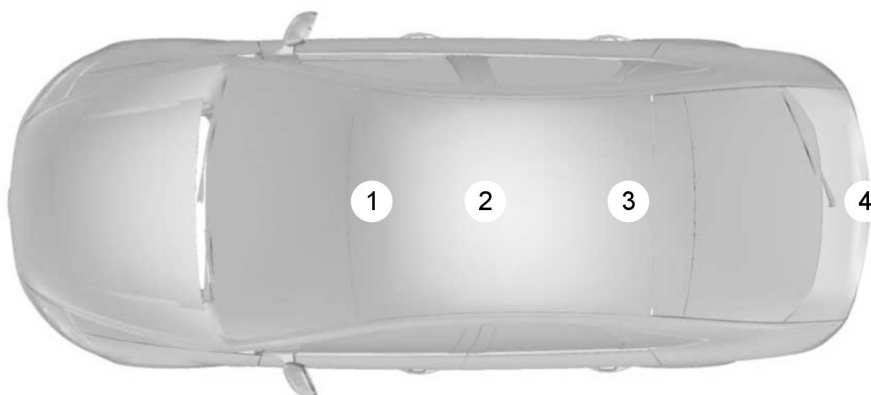
 Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the airbag system.

 Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

 Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 centimeters (4 inches) from any electronic modules and airbags.



## Appendices



E85998

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1 – 30	50 W	3, 4
30 – 54	50 W	1, 2, 3
68 – 87.5	50 W	1, 2, 3
142 – 176	50 W	1, 2, 3
380 – 512	50 W	1, 2, 3
806 – 940	10 W	1, 2, 3
1200 – 1400	10 W	1, 2, 3
1710 – 1885	10 W	1, 2, 3
1885 – 2025	10 W	1, 2, 3

**Note:** After the installation of RF transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in the vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- with the ignition **ON**
- with the engine running
- during a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside the vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.



### END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

#### SYNC® End User License Agreement (EULA)

- You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY") from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation ("MS"). Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("MS SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("FORD SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as "SOFTWARE".

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.



# Appendices

---

## Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.



## Appendices

---

- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.

- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates,

supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.



## Appendices

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

### **UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:**

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

### **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:**

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see <http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/>.



## Appendices

---

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. \$250.00).

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

### **Adobe**

Contains Adobe® [Flash® Player] or [AIR®] technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. This [Licensee Product] contains [Adobe® Flash® Player] [Adobe® AIR®] software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright ©1995-2009 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and AIR are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

### **End User Notice**

#### **Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information**

This system Ford SYNC™ contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

**Read and follow instructions:** Before using your Windows Automotive- based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

**Keep User's Guide in vehicle:** When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.



# Appendices

---

## WARNING



Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

### General Operation

**Voice Command Control:** Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

**Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

**Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

### Use of Speech Recognition Functions:

Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

**Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

**Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

**Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

**Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.



# Appendices

---

**Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

**Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

## **TeleNav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software.

TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

### **1. Safe and Lawful Use**

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software: (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely; (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver,

places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions; (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked; (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement; (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

### **2. Account Information**

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

### **3. Software License**

Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon



# Appendices

---

any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

## 3.1 License Limitations

You agree not to do any of the following:

(a) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; (b) attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; (c) remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; (d) distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or (e) use the TeleNav Software in any manner that (i) infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party, (ii) violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or (iii) is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

## 4. Disclaimers

To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.



# Appendices

---

## **5. Limitation of Liability**

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the

Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial.

This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of laws provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## **7. Assignment**

You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.



# Appendices

---

## **8. Miscellaneous**

### **8.1**

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### **8.2**

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement

### **8.3**

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

### **8.4**

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

### **8.5**

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect

### **8.6**

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

## **9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions**

The TeleNav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to TeleNav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the TeleNav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to TeleNav's third party vendor licensors:

### **NavTek End User License Agreement**

#### **END USER TERMS**

The content provided ("Data") is licensed, not sold. By opening this package, or installing, copying, or otherwise using the Data, you agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. If you do not agree to the terms of this agreement, you are not permitted to install, copy, use, resell or transfer the Data. If you wish to reject the terms of this agreement, and have not



## Appendices

---

installed, copied, or used the Data, you must contact your retailer or NAVTEQ North America, LLC ("NT") within thirty (30) days of purchase for a refund of your purchase price. To contact NT, please visit [www.navteq.com](http://www.navteq.com).

The Data is provided for your personal, internal use only and may not be resold. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this "End User License Agreement") and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAVTEQ North America, LLC ("NT") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®.

NT holds a nonexclusive license from the United States Postal Service ® to publish and sell ZIP+4 ® information.

© United States Postal Service ® 2009. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service ®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain Data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

### TERMS AND CONDITIONS

**License Limitations on Use:** You agree that your license to use this Data is limited to and conditioned on use for solely personal, noncommercial purposes, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise

reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

**License Limitations on Transfer:** Your limited license does not allow transfer or resale of the Data, except on the condition that you may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if: (a) you retain no copies of the Data; (b) the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement; and (c) you transfer the Data in the exact same form as you purchased it by physically transferring the original media (e.g., the CD-ROM or DVD you purchased), all original packaging, all Manuals and other documentation. Specifically, Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

**Additional License Limitations:** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NT in a separate written agreement, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, your license is conditioned on use of the Data as prescribed in this agreement, and you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.



## Appendices

### WARNING



This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic Data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty:** This Data is provided to you "as is", and you agree to use it at your own risk. NT and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** NT AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** NT AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS

OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NT OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control:** You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit NT from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

**Entire Agreement:** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NT (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.



# Appendices

**Severability:** You and NT agree that if any portion of this agreement is found illegal or unenforceable, that portion shall be severed and the remainder of the Agreement shall be given full force and effect.

**Governing Law:** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the personal jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users:** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial term" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use", and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

## NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR  
(MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

NAME:

## NAVTEQ

CONTRACTOR  
(MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

**425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.**

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101

and is subject to the End User License Agreement under

which this Data was provided.

© 2011 NAVTEQ. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify NAVTEQ prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Wi-Fi hotspot data provided by JiWire, © 2013 JiWire.

## Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright© 2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525, #6,061,680, #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

## Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").



## Appendices

---

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device.

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote

become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL



## Appendices

---

WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.

© Gracenote 2007.

FCC ID: KMHSYNGG2

IC: 1422A-SYNGG2

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### **WARNING**



Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

---

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.



# Index

## A

A/C	
See: Climate Control.....	97
About This Manual.....	7
Protecting the Environment.....	7
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	140
ABS driving hints	
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	140
Accessories	
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	8
Active City Stop.....	159
Principle of Operation.....	159
Active Park Assist.....	148
Principle of Operation.....	148
Adjusting the Headlamps - Vehicles With: Adaptive Front Lighting/High Intensity Discharge Headlamps.....	56
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	46
Air Conditioning	
See: Climate Control.....	97
Air Vents.....	97
Center air vents.....	97
Second row air vents.....	98
Side air vent.....	98
Alarm.....	44
Principle of Operation.....	44
Alternative frequencies.....	239
Appendices.....	284
Arming the alarm.....	45
Arming the engine immobilizer.....	43
At a Glance.....	9
.....	15
Adjusting the steering wheel.....	12
Autolamps.....	13
Automatic climate control.....	14
Automatic transmission.....	16
Autowipers.....	13
Diesel particulate filter (DPF).....	15
Fuel filler door.....	15
Information displays.....	14
Instrument panel overview.....	9
Keyless entry.....	12
Keyless starting.....	15
Locking the vehicle.....	12
Manual climate control.....	14
Manual transmission.....	16
Power folding mirrors.....	14
Power liftgate.....	12
Power windows.....	13
Speed limiter.....	17
Towing the vehicle on four wheels.....	17
Unlocking the vehicle.....	12
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	79
Automatic transmission.....	79
Frost.....	79
Key-in-ignition.....	80
Key outside car.....	80
Lights on.....	80
Low fuel.....	80
Luggage compartment lid - power liftgate.....	80
Safety belt reminder.....	80
Switching the chimes on and off.....	79
Audio Control.....	46
Type 1.....	46
Type 2.....	47
Audio introduction.....	226
Audio System Security.....	235
Audio troubleshooting.....	245
Audio Troubleshooting.....	245
Audio unit menus.....	239
Audio unit operation.....	236
Audio unit overview.....	227
Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	71
Autolamps.....	54



# Index

Automatic Climate Control.....	100
Mono Mode.....	102
Switching Mono Mode Back On.....	102
Switching Mono Mode Off.....	102
Temperature Control.....	101
Automatic High Beam Control.....	54
Manually Overriding the System.....	56
Setting the System Sensitivity.....	55
Switching the System On.....	55
Automatic Transmission.....	137
Emergency park position release lever.....	139
Hints on driving with an automatic transmission.....	139
Manual shifting - Vehicles with a 5 speed transmission.....	138
Selector lever positions.....	137
Sport mode and manual shifting - Vehicles with a 6 speed transmission.....	138
Automatic volume control.....	239
Auto-Start-Stop.....	129
Principle of Operation.....	129
Autostore control.....	237
Autowipers.....	48
Auxiliary Heater.....	102
Diesel auxiliary heater (depending on country).....	104
Fuel operated heater (depending on country).....	104
Parking heater.....	102
Auxiliary input jack.....	244
Auxiliary Input Jack.....	121
Auxiliary Power Points.....	119
Power inverter.....	119

## B

Battery connection points.....	203
Belt Minder.....	32
Deactivating the safety belt reminder.....	32
Grand C-MAX only.....	32
Blind Spot Monitor.....	72
Blind spot information system (BLIS).....	72
Detection errors.....	73
System detection and alerts.....	72
Turning the system on and off.....	73
Using the system.....	72

Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	188
Booster Seats.....	19
Booster cushion (Group 3).....	20
Booster seat (Group 2).....	19
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check.....	196
Brakes.....	140
Principle of Operation.....	140
Breaking-In.....	175
Brakes and clutch.....	175
Engine.....	175
Tires.....	175
Bulb changing	
See: Changing a Bulb.....	60
Bulb Specification Chart.....	67

## C

Capacities and Specifications.....	223
Technical Specifications.....	223
Cargo Nets.....	167
C-MAX.....	167
Grand C-MAX.....	167
Luggage retention net.....	167
Car Wash	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	200
Catalytic Converter.....	132
Driving with a catalytic converter.....	132
Changing a Bulb.....	60
Approach lamp.....	63
Central high mounted brake lamp.....	66
Front fog lamps.....	64
Headlamp.....	61
Interior lamps.....	67
License plate lamp.....	67
Luggage compartment lamp, footwell lamp and tailgate lamp.....	67
Rear lamps.....	64
Side lamp.....	62
Side repeater.....	63
Changing a Fuse.....	177



# Index

Changing a Road Wheel.....	204	Cruise control	
Assembling the wheel brace.....	206	See: Using Cruise Control.....	154
Installing a road wheel.....	208	Cup Holders.....	119
Jacking and lifting points.....	205	Seat back trays.....	120
Locking lug nuts.....	204		
Removing a road wheel.....	207	<b>D</b>	
Removing the wheel trim.....	207	Diesel Particulate Filter.....	127
Vehicle jack.....	204	Regeneration.....	127
Vehicles with a spare wheel.....	204	Digital signal processing (DSP).....	239
Changing the 12V Battery.....	203	Changing the DSP settings.....	239
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	50	DSP equalizer.....	239
Rear window wiper blade.....	51	DSP occupancy.....	239
Windshield wiper blades.....	50	Direction Indicators.....	58
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	50	Disabling the passenger airbag.....	33
Child Safety.....	18	Disabling the passenger airbag.....	34
Child Safety Locks.....	24	Enabling the passenger airbag.....	34
Child Seat Positioning.....	20	Fitting the passenger airbag deactivation	
Child Seats.....	18	switch.....	33
Child restraints for different mass		Disarming the alarm.....	45
groups.....	18	Vehicles with keyless entry.....	45
Cigar Lighter.....	118	Vehicles without keyless entry.....	45
Cleaning the Exterior.....	200	Disarming the engine immobilizer.....	43
Body paintwork preservation.....	201	DPF	
Cleaning the alloy wheels.....	200	See: Diesel Particulate Filter.....	127
Cleaning the chrome trim.....	200	Driver Alert.....	157
Cleaning the headlamps.....	200	Principle of Operation.....	157
Cleaning the rear window.....	200	Driving Aids.....	161
Cleaning the Interior.....	201	Driving Hints.....	175
Instrument cluster screens, LCD screens,		Driving Through Water.....	175
radio screens.....	201	Driving through water.....	175
Rear windows.....	201		
Safety belts.....	201	<b>E</b>	
Climate Control.....	97	Eco Mode.....	131
Principle of Operation.....	97	Principle of Operation.....	131
Clock.....	118	Electromagnetic compatibility.....	286
Coded keys.....	43	Emergency Exit.....	176
Cold Weather Precautions.....	175	Ending compact disc playback.....	243
Compact disc playback.....	241	End User License Agreement.....	288
Compact Disc Player.....	241	SYNC® End User License Agreement	
Compact disc track scanning.....	242	(EULA).....	288
Type 1.....	242	Engine Block Heater.....	128
Type 2 and 3.....	242	Engine Coolant Check.....	195
Convenience features.....	117	Checking the coolant level.....	195
Coolant Check		Topping up.....	196
See: Engine Coolant Check.....	195	Engine immobilizer.....	43
Cornering Lamps.....	58	Principle of Operation.....	43
Cruise Control.....	154		
Principle of Operation.....	154		



# Index

Engine Oil Check.....	195
Checking the oil level.....	195
Topping up.....	195
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	194
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma).....	194
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel/2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	195
Exterior Mirrors.....	70
Manual folding mirrors.....	70

## F

Fastening the safety belts.....	28
C-MAX.....	28
Grand C-MAX.....	30
Fast forward/reverse.....	241
First Aid Kit.....	176
Flat Tire Inflation	
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	209
Floor Mats.....	122
Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	56
Fog Lamps - Rear	
See: Rear Fog Lamps.....	56
Front Fog Lamps.....	56
Fuel and Refueling.....	132
Technical Specifications.....	135
Fuel Burning Heater	
See: Auxiliary Heater.....	102
Fuel Consumption.....	134
Fuel Consumption	
See: Technical Specifications.....	135
Fuel filler door.....	133
Refueling with a fuel can.....	134
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	132
Long-term storage.....	132
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	132
Fuse Box Locations.....	177
Engine compartment fuse box.....	177
Load compartment fuse box.....	177
Passenger compartment fuse box.....	177
Fuses.....	177

Fuse Specification Chart.....	178
Engine compartment fuse box.....	178
Load compartment fuse box.....	183
Passenger compartment fuse box.....	181

## G

Gauges.....	75
Engine coolant temperature gauge.....	76
Fuel gauge.....	76
Glasses Holder.....	120
Global Opening and Closing.....	41
Global closing.....	42
Global opening.....	41

## H

Handbrake	
See: Parking Brake.....	140
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	57
Headlamp adjustment	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps - Vehicles With: Adaptive Front Lighting/High Intensity Discharge Headlamps.....	56
Headlamp Leveling.....	56
Recommended headlamp leveling switch positions.....	57
Headlamp Washers.....	50
Head Restraints.....	106
Adjusting the Head Restraints.....	106
Removing the Head Restraints.....	107
Heated Seats.....	116
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	102
Heated exterior mirrors.....	102
Heated windows.....	102
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	97
Hill launch assist (HLA)	
See: Using hill start assist.....	142
Hill Start Assist.....	142
Principle of Operation.....	142
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	140
HLA	
See: Hill Start Assist.....	142
See: Using hill start assist.....	142
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	188



# Index

<b>I</b>	
Ignition Switch.....	123
Immobilizer	
See: Engine immobilizer.....	43
Important audio information.....	226
Audio unit labels.....	226
Disc labels.....	226
Information Displays.....	81
General Information.....	81
Information Messages.....	87
Airbag.....	88
Alarm.....	88
Battery and charging system.....	88
Blind spot monitor.....	89
Child power lock.....	89
Doors open.....	89
Engine immobilizer.....	90
Hill start assist.....	90
Keyless entry.....	90
Lighting.....	91
Maintenance.....	92
Message indicator.....	88
Power steering.....	93
Stability control (ESP).....	93
Starting the engine.....	93
Start-stop.....	94
Tire pressure monitoring system.....	96
Transmission.....	95
Instrument Cluster.....	75
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	118
Interior Lamps.....	59
Ambient lighting.....	59
Interior lighting.....	59
Introduction.....	7
ISOFIX Anchor Points.....	23
Attaching a child seat with top tethers.....	24
Top tether anchor points - All vehicles.....	23
Top tether anchor points - C-MAX.....	23
Top tether anchor points - Grand C-MAX.....	24
<b>J</b>	
Jump cables	
See: Jump-Starting the Vehicle.....	202
Jump starting	
See: Jump-Starting the Vehicle.....	202
Jump-Starting the Vehicle.....	202
To connect the booster cables.....	202
To start the engine.....	203
<b>K</b>	
Keyless Entry.....	39
Disabled keys.....	41
General information.....	39
Locking and unlocking the doors with the key blade.....	41
Locking the vehicle.....	39
Passive key.....	39
Unlocking the vehicle.....	40
Keyless Starting.....	125
Failure to start.....	126
Ignition on.....	125
Starting a diesel engine.....	126
Starting with automatic transmission.....	125
Starting with manual transmission.....	125
Stopping the engine when the vehicle is moving.....	127
Stopping the engine with the vehicle stationary.....	126
<b>L</b>	
Lane Keeping System.....	161
Lane Keeping Aid.....	162
Lane Keeping Alert.....	161
Lighting Control.....	53
Headlamp flasher.....	53
High and low beam.....	53
Home safe lighting.....	54
Lighting control positions.....	53
Parking lamps.....	53
Lighting.....	53
Load Carriers	
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	168
Load Carrying.....	165
General Information.....	165



# Index

Locking and Unlocking.....	35
Double locking.....	35
Locking.....	35
Locking and unlocking confirmation.....	36
Locking and unlocking the doors from inside.....	36
Locking the doors individually with the key.....	38
Luggage compartment lid.....	36
Sliding door.....	36
Unlocking.....	35
Locks.....	35
Luggage Anchor Points.....	165
Luggage Covers.....	167
Lug Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	204

## M

Maintenance.....	188
General Information.....	188
Technical Specifications.....	197
Manual Climate Control.....	98
Air conditioning.....	99
Air distribution control.....	98
Blower.....	99
Heating the interior quickly.....	99
Recirculated air.....	99
Ventilation.....	99
Manual Seats.....	105
Adjusting the angle of the seatback.....	106
Adjusting the height of the driver's seat.....	106
Adjusting the lumbar support.....	106
Moving the seats backwards and forwards.....	105
Manual Transmission.....	137
Message Center	
See: Information Displays.....	81
Mirrors	
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	102
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	69
MP3 display options.....	242
CD text display options.....	243
MP3 file playback.....	242
Playing a multi session disc.....	242

## N

Navigation.....	246
Hazard Spot Warning.....	253
Information.....	250
Loading Map Data.....	246
Menu Structure.....	247
Navigation Map Updates.....	254
Road Safety.....	246
Route Options.....	249
Setting a Route.....	247
Setting Your Navigation Preferences.....	250
Type Approvals.....	254
News broadcasts.....	239

## O

Occupant protection.....	26
Principle of Operation.....	26
Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	195
On/off control.....	236
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	188
Closing the hood.....	189
Opening the hood.....	188

## P

Parking Aids.....	144
Principle of Operation.....	144
Parking Aid - Vehicles With: Front and Rear Parking Aid.....	145
Maneuvering with the parking aid.....	146
Switching the parking aid on and off.....	145
Parking Aid - Vehicles With: Rear Parking Aid.....	144
Parking Brake.....	140
Personalized Settings.....	87
Chime deactivation.....	87
Language setting.....	87
Measure units.....	87
Temperature units.....	87
Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	35
Power exterior mirrors.....	70
Mirror tilting positions.....	71
Power folding mirrors.....	71
Power Seats.....	107



# Index

Power Windows.....	69	Running-In.....	
Accessory Delay.....	70	See: Breaking-In.....	175
Bounce-Back.....	69	<b>S</b>	
One-Touch Down.....	69	Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....	32
One-Touch Up.....	69	Safety Precautions.....	132
Window Lock.....	69	Satellite Navigation Unit Holder.....	122
<b>R</b>		Adjusting the holder.....	122
Rear Fog Lamps.....	56	Seats.....	105
Rear Seats.....	108	Security code.....	235
Second row seats - C-MAX.....	108	Shuffle/random.....	241
Second row seats - Grand C-MAX.....	113	Type 1.....	241
Third row seats - Grand C-MAX.....	115	Type 2 and 3.....	241
Rear view camera.....	151	Sitting in the Correct Position.....	105
Principle of Operation.....	151	Snow Chains	
Rear View Camera.....	151	See: Using Snow Chains.....	213
Activating the rear view camera.....	151	Sound button.....	236
Deactivating the rear view camera.....	153	Speed Control	
Using the display.....	152	See: Cruise Control.....	154
Vehicles with parking aid.....	153	Speed Limiter.....	156
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	49	Principle of Operation.....	156
Intermittent wipe.....	49	Stability Control.....	141
Rear window washer.....	50	Principle of Operation.....	141
Reverse gear wipe.....	49	Starter Switch	
Refueling.....	134	See: Ignition Switch.....	123
Regional mode (REG).....	240	Starting a Diesel Engine.....	125
Removing a Headlamp.....	60	Cold or hot engine.....	125
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	201	Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	124
Repeat compact disc tracks.....	241	Cold or hot engine.....	124
Type 1.....	241	Engine idle speed after starting.....	124
Type 2 and 3.....	241	Flooded engine.....	124
Replacement Parts		Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	123
Recommendation.....	8	General Information.....	123
Collision Repairs.....	8	Station preset buttons.....	237
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical		Station tuning control.....	236
Repairs.....	8	DAB service linking.....	236
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	8	Manual tuning.....	236
Retractable tow ball.....	172	Scan tuning.....	237
Driving with a trailer.....	174	Seek tuning.....	236
Maintenance.....	174	Steering Wheel Lock.....	123
Swivelling the tow ball in.....	172	Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles With:	
Swivelling the tow ball out.....	173	Push Button Start.....	123
Roadside Emergencies.....	176	Unlocking the Steering Wheel.....	124
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	168	Steering Wheel.....	46
Installing the crossbars.....	169	Storage compartments.....	120
Roof rack.....	168	Rear storage compartment.....	120



# Index

Sun Shades.....	117
Roof.....	117
Side windows.....	117
Switching Off the Engine.....	127
Vehicles with a turbocharger.....	127
Symbols Glossary.....	7
Symbols in this handbook.....	7
Symbols on your vehicle.....	7
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....	269
In the Event of a Crash.....	270
Switching Emergency Assistance On and Off.....	270
SYNC Emergency Assistance.....	269
SYNC™.....	255
General Information.....	255
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....	276

## T

Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	223
Temporary Mobility Kit.....	209
Checking the tire pressure.....	211
General information.....	209
Inflating the tire.....	210
Using the kit.....	209
Tire Care.....	212
Tire Inflation When Punctured	
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	209
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	213
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	214
How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures.....	216
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure.....	216
Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	214
Tire Repair Kit	
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	209
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	204
Towing a Trailer.....	171
Trailer Lighting.....	171
When towing a trailer.....	171

Towing Points.....	186
Installing the towing eye.....	186
Towing eye location.....	186
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....	186
All vehicles.....	186
Vehicles with automatic transmission.....	187
Towing.....	171
Track selection.....	241
Type 2 and 3.....	241
Traffic information control.....	237
Activating traffic announcements.....	237
Ending traffic announcements.....	238
Traffic announcement volume.....	238
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	163
Principle of Operation.....	163
Using the System.....	164
Transmission.....	137
Transmission	
See: Transmission.....	137
Trip Computer.....	86
Average fuel consumption.....	86
Average speed.....	86
Digital Speedometer.....	86
Distance to empty.....	86
Instantaneous fuel consumption.....	86
Odometer.....	87
Outside air temperature.....	87
Resetting the trip computer.....	87
Trip Odometer.....	86
Type approvals.....	284
Certificate for United Arab Emirates.....	286
EU Declaration.....	285
FCC/INDUSTRY CANADA NOTICE.....	284
RX-42 - declaration of conformity.....	284

## U

Under Hood Overview - 1.0L	
EcoBoost™.....	190
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L Duratec-16V	
Ti-VCT (Sigma).....	191
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L	
Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel.....	192
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L	
Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....	193
USB Port.....	121



# Index

Using Active City Stop.....	159	Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....	259
Switching the system on and off.....	160	Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone Menu.....	263
Using active park assist.....	148	Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings.....	265
Using Cruise Control.....	154	Bluetooth Devices.....	267
Canceling the set speed.....	155	Cell Phone Options During an Active Call.....	262
Changing the set speed.....	154	Cell Phone Voice Commands.....	260
Resuming the set speed.....	155	Making a Call.....	262
Setting a speed.....	154	Pairing a Cell Phone For the First Time.....	259
Switching cruise control off.....	155	Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones.....	259
Switching cruise control on.....	154	Receiving a Call.....	262
Using driver alert.....	157	Text Messaging.....	264
Resetting the system.....	158	Using the speed limiter.....	156
Switching the system on and off.....	157	Intentionally exceeding the set speed limit.....	156
System display.....	158	Setting the speed limit.....	156
System warnings.....	157	Switching the system on and off.....	156
Using Eco mode.....	131	System warnings.....	156
Resetting Eco mode.....	131	Using Voice Recognition.....	256
Using hill start assist.....	142	Helpful Hints.....	256
Activating the system.....	142	Initiating a Voice Session.....	257
Deactivating the system.....	142	System Interaction and Feedback.....	257
Vehicles with manual transmission only.....	142	Using Winter Tires.....	213
Using safety belts during pregnancy.....	33		
Using Snow Chains.....	213		
Vehicles with stability control (ESP).....	213		
Using Stability Control.....	141		
Using start-stop.....	129		
To re-start the engine.....	130		
To stop the engine.....	129		
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....	272		
Accessing Your USB Song Library.....	275		
Bluetooth Devices and System Settings.....	276		
Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port.....	272		
Media Menu Features.....	274		
Media Voice Commands.....	273		
What's Playing?.....	272		



## W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	77
ABS warning lamp.....	77
Airbag warning lamp.....	77
Automatic main beam lamp.....	77
Blind spot monitor indicator.....	77
Brake system lamp.....	77
Cruise control indicator.....	77
Direction indicators.....	77
Engine warning lamp.....	78
Front fog lamp indicator.....	78
Frost warning lamp.....	78
Glow plug indicator.....	78
Headlamp indicator.....	78
High beam indicator.....	78
Ignition warning lamp.....	78
Low fuel level warning lamp.....	78
Low tire pressure warning lamp.....	78
Message indicator.....	78
Oil pressure warning lamp.....	78
Overspeed indicator.....	79
Rear fog lamp indicator.....	79
Safety belt reminder.....	79
Stability control (ESP) indicator.....	79
Start-stop indicator.....	79
Warning Triangle.....	176
Washer Fluid Check.....	196
Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	200
See: Wipers and Washers.....	48
Waveband button.....	236
Wheel Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	204
Wheels and Tires.....	204
General Information.....	204
Technical Specifications.....	216
Windows and Mirrors.....	69
Windshield Washers.....	49
Windshield Wipers.....	48
Automatic wiper system.....	48
Intermittent wipe.....	48
Winter Tires	
See: Using Winter Tires.....	213
Wipers and Washers.....	48
Technical Specifications.....	52







